



A Programmer's Guide to Nektar++

Developer's Guide

Editors: Robert M. (Mike) Kirby, Spencer J. Sherwin, Chris
D. Cantwell and David Moxey

A distributed working draft for further contribution by the
Nektar++ community

July 4, 2026

Department of Aeronautics, Imperial College London, UK
Scientific Computing and Imaging Institute, University of Utah, USA

Contents

1	Preface	9
2	Introduction	13
2.1	The <i>Ethos</i> of Nektar++	14
2.2	The Structure of Nektar++	16
2.3	Assumed Proficiencies	20
2.4	Other Software Implementations and Frameworks	21
2.5	How to Use This Document	22
3	Preliminaries	24
3.1	Summary of Development Tools and Best Practices	24
3.1.1	General Resources	24
3.1.2	Version Control (git)	25
3.1.3	Building (CMake)	28
3.1.4	Testing (CTest)	28
3.1.5	Merge Requests (Gitlab)	28
3.2	Documentation and Tutorials	28
3.2.1	Dependencies	28
3.2.2	Compiling the User Guide	29
3.2.3	Developers Guide	29
3.2.4	Compiling the code documentation	30
3.3	Compiling Tutorials	30
3.4	Core Nektar++ Programming Concepts	30
3.4.1	Namespaces	31
3.4.2	C++ Standard Template Library (STL)	31
3.4.3	typedefs	32
3.4.4	Forward Declarations	32
3.4.5	Templated Classes and Specialization	33
3.4.6	Multiple Inheritance and the <code>virtual</code> Keyword	34
3.4.7	Virtual Functions and Inheritance	34

4 Contents

3.4.8	Const keyword	34
3.4.9	Function pointers and bind	34
3.4.10	Memory Pools and NekArray	35
3.5	Design Patterns	36
3.5.1	Template pattern	36
3.5.2	Abstract Factory Pattern	36
3.6	Software Testing Approaches	40
3.6.1	Unit Tests	40
3.6.2	Integration, System and Regression Tests	41
3.6.3	Performance Tests	41
3.6.4	Continuous Integration	42
I	Building-Blocks of Our Framework (Inside the Library)	43
4	Inside the Library: LibUtilities	44
4.1	BasicConst	44
4.2	BasicUtils	45
4.3	Communication	45
4.4	FFT	46
4.5	Foundations	46
4.5.1	Points	47
4.5.2	Basis	51
4.6	Interpreter	52
4.7	Kernel	52
4.8	Linear Algebra	53
4.9	Memory	54
4.10	Polylib	55
4.11	SIMDLib	57
4.12	Time Integration	58
4.12.1	General Linear Methods	59
4.12.2	Extrapolation Integration Schemes	62
4.12.3	Spectral Deferred Correction Integration Schemes	62
4.12.4	Fractional-in-time Integration Schemes	63
4.12.5	Usage	63
4.12.6	Implementation of a time-dependent problem	65
4.12.7	Strongly imposed essential boundary conditions	68
4.12.8	How to add a new GLM time-stepping method	70
4.12.9	Examples of already implemented time stepping schemes	70
5	Inside the Library: StdRegions	74
5.1	The Fundamentals Behind StdRegions	74
5.1.1	Reference Element Transformations That Facilitate Separability	76
5.1.2	Reference Elements On Primitive Geometric Types	77
5.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within StdRegions	79

5.2.1	Variables at the Level of StdExpansion	80
5.2.2	Variables at the Level of StdExpansion\$D for various Dimensions	81
5.2.3	Variables at the Level of Shape-Specific StdExpansions	82
5.2.4	General Layout of the Basis Functions in Memory	82
5.2.5	General Layout	82
5.2.6	2D Geometries	83
5.2.7	3D Geometries	84
5.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within StdRegions	86
6	Inside the Library: SpatialDomains	87
6.1	The Fundamentals Behind SpatialDomains	88
6.1.1	Vertex and Curvature Mapping Information	89
6.1.2	Regular Mappings: Geometric Factors	92
6.1.3	Deformed Mappings: Geometric Factors	93
6.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within SpatialDomains	94
6.2.1	Variables at the Level of Geometry	95
6.2.2	Variables at the Level of Geometry\$D for various Dimensions	95
6.2.3	Variables at the Level of Shape-Specific Geometry Information	95
6.2.4	Reference to World-Space Mapping	95
6.2.5	MeshGraph and MeshGraphIO	95
6.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within SpatialDomains	96
7	Inside the Library: LocalRegions	97
7.1	The Fundamentals Behind LocalRegions	97
7.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within LocalRegions	97
7.2.1	Variables at the Level of Expansion	98
7.2.2	Variables at the Level of Expansion\$D for various Dimensions	99
7.2.3	Variables at the Level of Shape-Specific Expansions	99
7.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within LocalRegions	99
7.3.1	Mapping trace data from an element face	100
7.3.2	Questions and Answers	102
8	Inside the Library: Collections	103
8.1	The Fundamentals Behind Collections	103
8.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within Collections	104
8.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within Collections	104
9	Inside the Library: MultiRegions	106
9.1	The Fundamentals Behind MultiRegions	106
9.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within MultiRegions	108
9.2.1	Variables at the Level of ExpList	109
9.2.2	Variables at the Level of ExpList\$D for various Dimensions	109
9.2.3	Variables at the Level of Discontinuous Field Expansions	110
9.2.4	Variables at the Level of Continuous Field Expansions	110
9.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within MultiRegions	110

9.4	Preconditioners	110
9.4.1	Mathematical formulation	111
9.4.2	Preconditioners	112
9.4.3	Low energy	114
9.4.4	Lower-order Refined (LOR) preconditioner	116
10	Inside the Library: GlobalMapping	123
10.1	The Fundamentals Behind GlobalMapping	123
10.1.1	Divergence operator	124
10.1.2	Laplacian operator	125
10.1.3	Anisotropic diffusion	126
10.1.4	Anisotropic Laplacian operator	126
10.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within GlobalMapping	126
10.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within GlobalMapping	126
11	Inside the Library: FieldUtils	127
11.1	The Fundamentals Behind FieldUtils	127
11.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within FieldUtils	127
11.2.1	Overview of how modules work	128
11.2.2	Module	129
11.2.3	InputModule	130
11.2.4	ProcessModule	130
11.2.5	OutputModule	130
11.2.6	ConfigOption	131
11.2.7	The Field struct	131
11.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within FieldUtils	133
12	Inside the Library: SolverUtils	134
12.1	The Fundamentals Behind SolverUtils	134
12.2	The Fundamental Data Structures within SolverUtils	134
12.3	The Fundamental Algorithms within SolverUtils	134
12.3.1	Filters	134
II	Solvers	136
13	ADRSolver: Solving the Advection-Reaction-Diffusion Equation	138
14	IncNavierStokesSolver: Solving the Incompressible Navier-Stokes Equations	139
14.1	Fundamental Theories of IncNavierStokesSolver	139
14.1.1	Governing Equations	139
14.1.2	Time discretisation	139
14.1.3	Spatial discretisation/Implementation	141
14.2	Functions of the implementation	142
14.3	Structure of the algorithm	142

15 CompressibleFlowSolver: Solving the Compressible Navier-Stokes Equations	144
15.1 Fundamental Theories of CompressibleFlowSolver	144
15.1.1 Governing equations	144
15.1.2 Discretization	144
15.2 Functions of the implementation	147
15.3 Data Structure of CompressibleFlowSolver	147
15.4 Flow Chart of CompressibleFlowSolver	149
 III Utilities	 151
16 FieldConvert	153
17 NekMesh	158
17.1 Introduction	158
17.2 Theory	158
17.2.1 Mesh Hierarchy	158
17.2.2 Vertex node ordering rules	159
17.2.3 Higher-order node ordering rules	163
17.3 Input Modules	164
17.3.1 StarCCM+ .ccm input (InputStar.cpp)	167
17.3.2 Gmsh .msh input (InputGmsh.cpp)	167
17.3.3 CGNS .cgns input (InputCGNS.cpp)	167
17.4 Process Modules	168
17.5 Output Modules	168
 Bibliography	 170
 IV NekPy: Python interface to <i>Nektar++</i>	 171
18 Introduction	172
18.1 Features and functionality	172
19 Installing NekPy	174
19.1 Compiling and installing Nektar++	174
19.1.1 macOS	174
19.1.2 Linux: Ubuntu/Debian	175
19.1.3 Compiling the wrappers	175
19.2 Using the bindings	175
19.2.1 Examples	175
20 Package structure	177
21 NekPy wrapping guide	179

21.1	Defining a library	179
21.2	Basic class wrapping	180
21.2.1	<code>py::class_<></code>	180
21.2.2	Wrapping member functions	181
21.2.3	Inheritance	183
21.2.4	Wrapping enums	184
22	Documentation	185
23	Memory management in NekPy	187
23.1	Memory management in C++ and Python	187
23.1.1	C++	187
23.2	Passing C++ memory to Python	189
23.2.1	Passing Python data to C++	195
24	FieldConvert in NekPy	202
24.1	Idea and motivation	202
24.1.1	Bindings	202
	Bibliography	204

Preface

Like with any software project, people want to know its origins: what motivated it, what and who drove it, and what constrained it. *Nektar++* officially started as a project idea in 2004 in Salt Lake City, UT, USA, and we registered the first commit to SVN in 2006. The basic backstory is as follows: Mike Kirby (University of Utah) and Spencer Sherwin (Imperial College London) had both studied under George Karniadakis. Though Mike and Spencer did not overlap in terms of their studies (Spencer was a Princeton graduate while Mike was a Brown graduate), they both worked on *Nektar*, a spectral/*hp* element code supervised by George. George's research group has had a long history of involvement in various software projects, e.g. PRISM (which has continued its existence under Professor Hugh Blackburn at Monash University) and *Nektar*. Spencer and George initiated the *Nektar* code with triangular (2D) and tetrahedral (3D) spectral/*hp* elements in the early 1990s, and the code grew and evolved with additions by Dr. Igor Lomtev, Dr. Tim Warburton, Dr. Mike Kirby, etc., all under the PhD advisor direction of George. Spencer graduated from Princeton under George's supervision in 1995 and went on to Imperial College London as a faculty member; Mike graduated from Brown under George's supervision in 2002 and went on to the University of Utah in 2002. In 2004, Mike and Spencer teamed up to re-write *Nektar* in light of modern *C++* programming practices and in light of what had been learned in the decade or so since its foundation.

What were the observations that motivated *Nektar++*? The first observation was that *Nektar*'s origin was triangular and tetrahedral spectral/*hp* elements as applied to incompressible fluid mechanics problems (i.e., the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations). These ideas were extended to the compressible Navier-Stokes by Lomtev and the two parallel paths joined and extended into what is often called Hybrid *Nektar* by Tim Warburton. Hybrid *Nektar* (referred to as *Nektar* from here on out) used the *C++* programming paradigm to facilitate hybrid elements: triangles and quadrilaterals in 2D and tetrahedra, hexahedra, prisms and pyramids in 3D. In addition, Warburton structured the code in a way that allowed extension to the Arbitrary Lagrangian Eulerian (ALE) formulation within *Nektar*, as well as various other features such as the *Nektar* Magneto-Hydrodynamics (MHD) solver. Mike was mentored (as a student) by Warburton

and continued the expansion of *Nektar* (e.g. compressible ALE solver, fluid-structure interaction capabilities, etc.). The expansion of *Nektar*'s capabilities, under the direction of George Karniadakis, continues to this day (e.g., *Stress-Nektar*). The upside of this expansion was that *Nektar* could be expanded and used for solving more and more engineering problems; the downside, in our opinion, was that continually expanding and extending *Nektar* without re-evaluating its fundamental design meant that some components became quite cumbersome from the programming perspective.

The second observation that occurred was that spectral/*hp* elements, as used within the incompressible fluid mechanics world, could be viewed as a special case of the broader set of high-order finite element methods as applied to various fluid and solid mechanics systems. In fact, in a much wider context, these methods represent ways of discretizing various partial differential equations (PDEs) using their weak (variational) form. From this vantage point, one can see the commonality between strong-form methods such as spectral collocation and flux reconstruction, and weak-form methods such as traditional finite elements, spectral elements, and even discontinuous Galerkin methods. During the 1990s, it became more and more apparent that there was a broader context and a broader community for discussing and disseminating the ideas surrounding high-order finite elements, and correspondingly a fruitful environment for cross-pollination of ideas and programming practices.

With all this in mind, Mike and Spencer set out to re-architect *Nektar* from the ground up, and in homage to its *C++* core, this new software suite was called *Nektar++*. *Nektar++* is an open-source software framework designed to support the development of high-performance scalable solvers for partial differential equations using the spectral/*hp* element method. High-order methods are gaining prominence in several engineering and biomedical applications due to their improved accuracy over low-order techniques at reduced computational cost for a given number of degrees of freedom. However, their proliferation is often limited by their complexity, which makes these methods challenging to implement and use. *Nektar++* is an initiative to overcome this limitation by encapsulating the mathematical complexities of the underlying method within an efficient *C++* framework, making the techniques more accessible to the broader scientific and industrial communities. Given the commonalities and connections between various strong-form and weak-form methods and their implementations, we use the term spectral/*hpm* methods to refer to the entire family of methods, from traditional FEM to discontinuous Galerkin (dG) to Flux Reconstruction (FR) and beyond.

The software supports a variety of discretization techniques and implementation strategies, supporting methods research as well as application-focused computation, and the multi-layered structure of the framework allows the user to embrace as much or as little of the complexity as they need. The libraries capture the mathematical constructs of spectral/*hp* element methods, while the associated collection of pre-written PDE solvers provides out-of-the-box application-level functionality and a template for users who wish to develop solutions for addressing questions in their own scientific domains.

After five years of laying the groundwork for *Nektar++*, Dr. Chris Cantwell and Dr. David Moxey joined Spencer's group at ICL. Their involvement in the project has greatly impacted the structure and capabilities of *Nektar++*, and has played a significant role in its success. In 2017, we formalized our Development Team structure. Kirby and Sherwin as Founders, along with Cantwell and Moxey, form the key Project Leaders. We established the following roles within the *Nektar++* community:

- User: Individuals or teams who use *Nektar++* as part of their research and who may interact with the community through the mailing list but do not directly contribute code.
- Contributor: Individuals or teams who use *Nektar++* as part of their work but also contribute modifications back into the code which arise as a direct consequence of their research.
- Developer: Individuals who use *Nektar++* for their research, and make code contributions which not only benefit their own research goals but also benefits the wider needs of the *Nektar++* community. Such contributions typically benefit multiple application domains, and developers will make the extra effort to generalize new functionality beyond their own needs. They also fix bugs, identified by others, in areas of the code with which they are familiar.
- Senior Developer: Senior Developers are involved in the development of *Nektar++* beyond their individual research area and interact in more of a transcendent way, making contributions widely across the codebase. Senior developers are entrusted with the tasks of reviewing and merging contributions made by others and maintaining the integrity of the code.
- Project Leader: These individuals meet all the requirements of Senior Developers but in addition direct how *Nektar++* evolves in terms of applications, solvers, library and educational outreach.

This developer's guide, like most of *Nektar++*, is not due to one sole person but an army of people each with different talents, skills and motivations. As we conclude this preface, we will now provide a short biography for the four editors of this volume, and also provide a listing of all the people who have contributed to this document.

Robert M. (Mike) Kirby: Prof. Mike Kirby is a Professor and the Associate Director of the School of Computing at the University of Utah.

Spencer J. Sherwin: Prof. Spencer Sherwin is a Professor of Computational Fluid Mechanics in the Department of Aeronautics at Imperial College London (UK).

Chris D. Cantwell: Dr. Chris Cantwell is a Senior Lecturer in Aeronautics in the Department of Aeronautics at Imperial College London (UK).

David Moxey: Dr. David Moxey is a Senior Lecturer in Engineering in the College of Engineering, Mathematics and Physical Sciences at the University of Exeter (UK).

Contributors: The thank all the various participants in the *Nektar++* Project who have contributed to this document¹: Dr. Peter Vos (ICL) and Mr. Dav de St. Germain (Utah).

To see the full team and other current details about *Nektar++*, visit our [website](#).

We hope that you find this developer’s guide of use to you, that you find *Nektar++* helpful to your educational or industrial pursuits, and that like us, you will actively want to engage and contribute back to the *Nektar++* community.

Mike Kirby
Spencer Sherwin
Chris Cantwell
David Moxey

¹Affiliation information is in reference to where the person was employed at the time of their contribution.

Introduction

Nektar++ [11], is an open-source software framework designed to support the development of high-performance scalable solvers for partial differential equations using the spectral/*hp* element method. What in part makes *Nektar++* unique is that it is an initiative to overcome the mathematical complexities of the methods by encapsulating them within an efficient cross-platform *C++* software environment, consequently making the techniques more accessible to the broader scientific and industrial communities. The software supports a variety of discretization techniques and implementation strategies [68, 13, 12, 8], supporting methods research as well as application-focused computation, and the multi-layered structure of the framework allows the user to embrace as much or as little of the complexity as they need. The libraries capture the mathematical constructs of spectral/*hp* element methods in the form of a hierarchy of *C++* components, while the associated collection of pre-written PDE solvers provides out-of-the-box functionality across a range of application areas, as well as a template for users who wish to develop solutions for addressing questions in their own scientific domains.

The cross-platform nature of the software libraries enables the rapid development of solvers for use in a wide variety of computing environments. The code accommodates both small research problems, suitable for desktop computers, and large-scale industrial simulations, requiring modern HPC infrastructure, where there is a need to maintain efficiency and scalability up to many thousands of processor cores.

Nektar++ provides a single codebase with the following key features:

- Arbitrary-order spectral/*hp* element discretisations in one, two and three dimensions;
- Support for variable polynomial order in space and heterogeneous polynomial order within two- and three-dimensional elements;
- High-order representation of the geometry;

- Continuous Galerkin, discontinuous Galerkin and hybridised discontinuous Galerkin projections;
- Support for a Fourier extension of the spectral element mesh;
- Support for a range of linear solvers and preconditioners;
- Multiple implementation strategies for achieving linear algebra performance on a range of platforms;
- Efficient parallel communication using MPI showing strong scaling up to 8192-cores on Archer, the UK national HPC system;
- A range of time integration schemes implemented using generalised linear methods; and
- Cross-platform support for Linux, OS X and Windows operating systems.

In addition to the core functionality listed above, *Nektar++* includes a number of solvers covering a range of application areas. A range of pre-processing and post-processing utilities are also included with support for popular mesh and visualization formats, and an extensive test suite ensures the robustness of the core functionality.

2.1 The *Ethos* of Nektar++

As with any research effort, one is required to decide on a set of guiding principles that will drive the investigation. Similarly with a software development effort of this form, we spent considerable time early on considering which aspects we wanted to be distinctive about *Nektar++* and also what guiding principles would be most suitable to support both the goals and the boundaries of what we wanted to do. We did this for at least two reasons: (1) We acknowledged then and now that there are various software packages and open-source efforts that deal with finite element frameworks, and so we wanted to be able to understand and express to people those things we thought were distinctive to us – that is, our “selling points”. (2) We also acknowledged, from our own experience on software projects, that if we did not set up some collection of guiding principles for our work, that we would gravitate towards trying to be “all things to all men”, and in doing so be at odds with the first item. Below are a list of the guiding principles, the “ethos”, of the *Nektar++* software development effort.

Principles: The following are our three guiding principles for *Nektar++* which respect (1) above:

- **Efficiently:** *Nektar++* was to be a “true” high-order code. “True” is put in quotations because we acknowledge that high-order means different things to different communities. Based upon a review of the literature, we came to the conclusion that part of our *h-to-p* philosophy should be that we accommodate

polynomial degrees ranging from zero (finite volumes) or one (traditional linear finite elements) up to what is considered “spectral” (pseudospectral) orders of 16^{th} degree. As part of our early work [68], we established that in order to span this range of polynomial degrees and attempt to maintain some level of computational efficiency, we would need to develop *order-aware* algorithms: that is, we would need to utilize different (equivalent) algorithms appropriate for a particular order. This principle was the starting point of our *h-to-p efficiently* branding and continues to be a driving principle of our work.

- **Transparently:** *Nektar++* was to be agnostic as to what the “right” way to discretize a partial differential equation (PDE). “Right” is put in quotations to acknowledge that like the issue of polynomial order, there appear to be different “camps” who hold very strong views as to which discretization method should be used. Some might concede that continuous Galerkin methods are very natural for elliptic and parabolic PDEs and then work very laboriously to shoehorn all mixed-type PDEs (such as the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations) into this form. This holds true (similarly) for finite volume and dG proponents with regards to hyperbolic problems (and those systems that are dominated by hyperbolicity). Our goal was to be a high-order finite element framework that allowed users to experiment with continuous Galerkin (cG) and discontinuous Galerkin (dG) methods.
- **Seamlessly:** *Nektar++* was to be a code that could run from the desktop (or laptop) to exascale, seamlessly. It was our observation that many *grand challenge* efforts target petascale and exascale computing, with the idea that in the future what is done now on a supercomputer will be done on the desktop. The supercomputer of today is in a rack within five years and on our desktop in ten years. However, we also acknowledged that many of our end users were interested in computing *now*. That is, following from their engineering tradition they had an engineering or science problem to solve, and they wanted the ability to run on machines ranging from their laptops to exascale as the problem demanded. Not all problems fit on your laptop, and yet not all problems are exascale problems. Like with our *h-to-p efficiently* approach, we wanted our algorithms and code development to allow a range of choices in the hands of the engineer.

Based upon these principles, our long-term vision is a software framework that allows the engineer the flexibility to make all these critical choices (elemental discretization, polynomial order, discretization methodology, algorithms to employ, and architecture-specific details) while at the same time having *smart and adaptive defaults*. That is, we want to accommodate both the engineer that wants control over all the various knobs that must be set to actualize a simulation run and the engineer that wants to remain at the high-level and let the software system choose what is best in terms of discretization, polynomial order, algorithm choice, etc. We want the flexibility to self tune, while targeting auto-tuning.

The three items above denote the principles of our development efforts. We now present the “guardrails”. By guardrails, we mean the guidelines we use to help steer us along towards our goal as stated above. These are not meant to be absolutes necessarily, but are considerations we often use to try to keep us on track in terms of respecting our three guiding principles above.

Guardrails:

- We are principally concerned with advection-reaction-diffusion and conservation law problems. There are many simulation codes that are deal with solid mechanics, and we did not see ourselves as being a competitor with them. As such, we did not initially construct our framework to inherently deal with $H - div$ and $H - curl$ spaces (and their respective element types). Our perspective was to hold a system of scalar fields and, as needed, constrain them to respect certain mathematical properties.
- We rely heavily on the ability to do tensor-product-based quadrature. Although our more recent additions to the Point and Basis information within our library allows for unstructured quadrature, many of our algorithms are designed to try to capitalize on tensor-product properties.
- As we said earlier, we have designed our code to run at a range of orders, from one to sixteen. However, we acknowledge that for many simulation regimes, we often do not run at the lowest and/or the highest orders. For many applications, the sweet spot seems to be polynomials of degree four through eight. At the present time, a reasonable amount of time and effort has been spent optimizing for this range.
- The robustness of our testing is often dictated by the application areas that have funded our code development. At the present time, our incompressible Navier-Stokes solver is probably the most tested of our solvers, followed by our ADR solver. We make every attempt to test our codes thoroughly; however we benefit greatly from various users “stress-testing” our codes and providing feedback on things we can improve (or better yet, suggesting coding solutions).

2.2 The Structure of Nektar++

When we speak of *Nektar++*, it often means different things to different people, all under an umbrella of code. For the founders of *Nektar++*, the view was that the core of *Nektar++* was the library, and that everything else was to be built around or on top of our basic spectral/*hp* framework. For others, the heart of *Nektar++* are its solvers – the collection of simulation codes, built upon the library, that enable users to solve science and engineering problems. For a smaller group of people, it is all the add-ons that we provide in our utilities, from our mesh generation techniques to our visualization software ideas.

For the purposes of this document, we will structure our discussions into three main parts: library functionality, solvers and utilities. In this section, we will provide an overview of the structure of the libraries. We will start by giving a quick overview of the basic subdirectories contained within *library* and their purpose. We will then provide a bottom-up description of how the library can be viewed, as well as a top-down perspective. Each perspective (bottom-up or top-down) is fully consistent with each other; the advantage of these approaches is that they help the future developer understand the library as someone trying to build up towards our solvers, or conversely someone trying to understand our solver functionality having already been a solver user and now trying to understand the library components on which it was built.

The basic subdirectories with the *library* are as follows:

LibUtilities: This library contains all the basic mathematical and computer science building blocks of the *Nektar++* code.

StdRegions: This library contains the objects that express “standard region” data and operations. In one dimension, this is the StdSegment. In two dimensions, this is the StdTri (Triangle) and StdQuad (Quadrilateral). In three dimensions, this is the StdTet (Tetrahedra), StdHex (Hexahedra), StdPrism (Prism) and StdPyr (Pyramid). These represent the seven different standardized reference regions over which we support differentiation and integration.

SpatialDomains: This library contains the mesh and elemental geometric information. In particular, this part of the library deals with the basic mesh data structures, and the mapping information (such as Jacobians) from StdRegions to LocalRegions.

LocalRegions: This library contains objects that express data and operations on individual physical elements of the computational mesh. Local regions are spectral/*hp* elements in world-space (either straight-/planar-sided or curved-sided). Using *C++* terminology, a local region object *is-a* standard region object and *has-a* spatial domain object.

MultiRegions: This library holds the data structures that represent sets of elements (local regions). At the most fundamental level, these represent the union of local regions into a (geometrically-contiguous) space. By specifying the interaction of these elements, the function space they represent and/or the approximation method is defined. It is at this point in the hierarchy that a set of (local region) elements can be thought of as representing a dG or cG field.

Collections: In this library we amalgamate, in a linear algebra sense, the action of key operators on multiple (standard region or local region) elements into a single, memory-efficient block. These strategies depend on external factors such as BLAS implementation and the geometry of interest.

GlobalMapping: This library supports the analytical mapping of complex physical

domains to simpler computational domains.

NekMeshUtils: This library contains processing modules for the generation (potentially from CAD geometries), conversion and manipulation of high-order meshes.

SolverUtils: This library contains data structures and algorithms which form the basis of solvers, or provide auxiliary functionality.

UnitTests: This part of the library contains unit tests that allow us to verify the correctness of the core functionality within *Nektar++*. These are useful for verifying that new additions or modifications to the lower-levels of the code do not compromise existing functionality or correctness.

Bottom-Up Perspective

The bottom-up perspective on the library is best understood from Figures 2.1 – 2.2. In Figure 2.1, we take the view of understanding the geometric regions over which we build approximations. Our starting point is within the StdRegions library, in which we define our canonical standard regions. There are seven fundamental regions supported by *Nektar++*: segments (1D), triangles and quadrilaterals (2D) and tetrahedra, hexahedra, prisms and pyramids (3D). Since we principally employ Gaussian quadrature, these regions are defined by various tensor-product and collapsing of the compact interval $[-1, 1]$. For the purposes of illustration, let us use a quadrilateral as our example. The StdQuadExp is a region defined on $[-1, 1] \times [-1, 1]$ over which we can build approximations $\phi^e(\xi_1, \xi_2)$. Typically ϕ^e is based upon polynomials in each coordinate direction; using linear functions in both directions yields the traditional $Q(1)$ space in traditional finite elements.

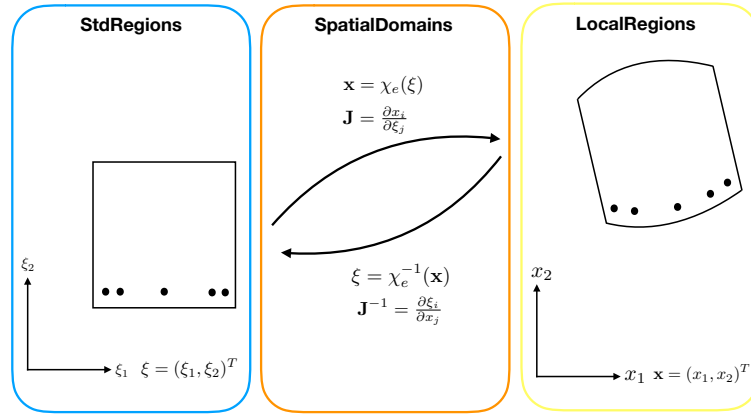


Figure 2.1 Diagram showing the LocalRegion (yellow) *is-a* StdRegion (blue) which *has-a* SpatialDomain (orange) in terms of coordinate systems and mapping functions. This diagram highlights how points (positions in space) are mapped between different (geometric) regions.

Since $\phi^e(\xi_1, \xi_2)$ lives on $\mathcal{Q} = [-1, 1] \times [-1, 1]$ (i.e. $\phi^e : \mathcal{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$) and is for this example polynomial, we can integrate it exactly (to machine precision) using Gaussian integration,

and we can differentiate it by writing it in a Lagrange basis and forming a differential operator matrix to act on values of the function evaluated at points. If the function were not polynomial but instead only a smooth function, we could approximate it with quadrature and decide an appropriate basis by which to approximate its derivatives. All the routines needed for differentiating and integrating polynomials over various standard regions are contained within the StdRegions directory (and will be discussed in Chapter 5). A local region expansion, such as a basis defined on a quadrilateral element, QuadExp, is a linear combination of basis functions over its corresponding standard region as mapped by information contained within its spatial domain mapping. Local region class definitions are in the LocalRegions directory (and will be discussed in Chapter 7). Using the inheritance language of *C++*, we would say that a local region *is-a* standard region and *has-a* spatial domain object. The SpatialDomains directory contains information that expresses the mapping function $\chi_e(\cdot)$ from the standard region to a local region. SpatialDomains is explored in Chapter 6. In the case of our quad example, the SpatialDomain object held by a QuadExp would connect the local region to its StdRegion parent, and correspondingly would allow integration and differentiation in world space (i.e., the natural coordinates in which the local expansion lives). If $\mathcal{E}$ denotes our geometric region in world space and if $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is built upon polynomials over its standard region, then we obtain $F(x_1, x_2) = \phi^e(\chi_e^{-1}(x_1, x_2))$. Note that even though ϕ^e is polynomial and χ_e is polynomial, the composition using the inverse of χ_e is not guaranteed to be polynomial: it is only guaranteed to be a smooth function.

Putting this in the context of MultiRegions, we arrive at Figure 2.2. The MultiRegions directory (which will be discussed in Chapter 9) contains various data structures that combine local regions. One can think of a multi-region as being a set of local region objects in which some collection of geometric and/or function properties are enforced. Conceptually, one can have a set of local region objects that have no relationship to each other in space. This is a set in the mathematical sense, but not really meaningful to us for solving approximation properties. Most often we want to think of sets of local regions as being collections of elements that are geometrically contiguous – that is, given any two elements in the set, we expect that there exists a path that allows us to trace from one element to the next. Assuming a geometrically continuous collection of elements, we can now ask if the functions built over those elements form a piece-wise discontinuous approximation of a function over our Multiregion or a piece-wise continuous C^0 approximation of a function over our Multiregion.

Top-Down Perspective

The top-down perspective on the library is best understood from Figure 2.3. From this perspective, we are interested in understanding *Nektar++* from the solvers various people have contributed.

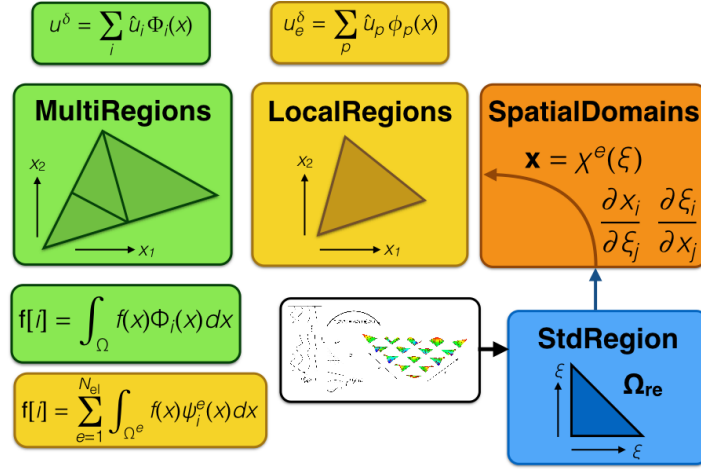


Figure 2.2 Diagram showing how a MultiRegion (green) contains a collection of LocalRegions (yellow), where a LocalRegion *is-a* StdRegion (blue) which *has-a* SpatialDomain (orange) in terms of coordinate systems and mapping functions. This diagram highlights the expansions of the solution formed over each geometric domain.

2.3 Assumed Proficiencies

This developer's guide is designed for the experienced spectral/*hp* user who wishes to go beyond using various *Nektar++* solvers and possibly to add new features or capabilities at the library, solver or utilities levels. Since the focus of this document is *Nektar++*, we cannot recapitulate all relevant mathematical or computer science concepts upon which our framework is built. In this section we provide a listing of areas and/or topics of assumed knowledge, and we provide a non-exhaustive list of references to help the reader see the general areas of additional reading they may need to benefit fully from this manual.

We assume the reader has a familiarity and comfort-level with the following areas:

1. Finite Element Methods (FEM) [39, 59, 5] and more generally the mathematical ideas surrounding continuous Galerkin (cG) methods. This includes basic calculus of variation concepts, basic partial differential equation knowledge, and general forms of discretization and approximation.
2. Polynomial Methods [15, 31, 35], and in particular concepts surrounding polynomial spaces, basis functions and numerical differentiation and quadrature.
3. Spectral Element Methods (SEM) [22, 44].
4. Discontinuous Galerkin Methods [17, 38].
5. Scientific Computing [34, 43]. We assume a graduate-level proficiency in basic computational techniques such as dealing with numerical precision (accuracy and

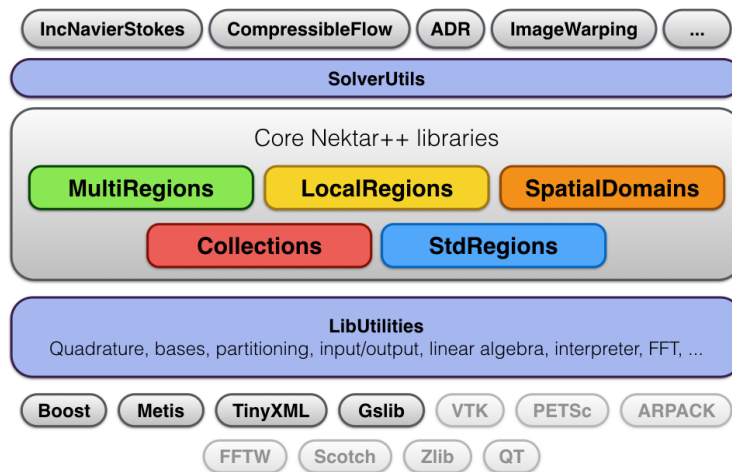


Figure 2.3 Diagram showing the top-down perspective on library components. Various solvers (along the top) can capitalize on generic SolverUtils and are built upon the core *Nektar++* libraries consisting of MultiRegions (green), Collections (red), LocalRegions (yellow), SpatialDomains (orange) and StdRegions (blue). The most generic mathematical and computer science features are contained within LibUtilities, which in part draws from various community resources such as Boost, Metis, etc.

conditioning), root-finding algorithms, differentiation and integration, and basic optimization.

6. Linear Algebra [66, 20]. We assume a strong knowledge of linear algebra and a reasonable comfort level with the various numerical algorithms used for the solution of symmetric and non-symmetric linear systems.

2.4 Other Software Implementations and Frameworks

In the last ten years a collection of software frameworks has been put forward to try to bridge the gap between the mathematics of high-order methods and their implementation. A number of software packages already exist for fluid dynamics which implement high-order finite element methods, although these packages are typically targeted at a specific domain or provide limited high-order capabilities as an extension. A major challenge many practitioners have with spectral/*hp* elements and high-order methods, in general, is the complexity (in terms of algorithmic design) they encounter. In this section, we give an incomplete but representative summary of several of these attempts to overcome this challenge.

The *Nektar flow solver* is the predecessor to *Nektar++* and implements the spectral/*hp* element method for solving the incompressible and compressible Navier-Stokes equations in both 2D and 3D. While it is widely used and the implementation is computationally efficient on small parallel problems, achieving scaling on large HPC clusters is challenging.

Semtex [7] implements the 2D spectral element method coupled with a Fourier expansion in the third direction. The implementation is highly efficient, but can only be parallelised through Fourier-mode decomposition. Nek5000 [28] is a 3D spectral element code, based on hexahedral elements, which has been used for massively parallel simulations up to 300,000 cores. The Non-hydrostatic Unified Model of the Atmosphere (NUMA) [32] is a spectral element framework that employs continuous and discontinuous Galerkin strategies for solving a particular problem of interest, but in a way on which others could adopt and build. Hermes [67] implements hp-FEM for two-dimensional problems and has been used in a number of application areas. Limited high-order finite element capabilities are also included in a number of general purpose PDE frameworks including the DUNE project [19] and deal.II [6]. FEniCS [49] is a collaborative project for the development of scientific computing tools, with a particular focus on the automated solution of differential equations by finite element methods (FEM). Through the use of concepts such as meta-programming, FEniCS tries to keep the solving of PDEs with FEM, from the application programmers' perspective, as close to the mathematical expressions as possible without sacrificing computational efficiency. A number of codes also implement high-order finite element methods on GPGPUs including nudg++, which implements a nodal discontinuous Galerkin scheme [36], and PyFR [71], which supports a range of flux reconstruction techniques.

2.5 How to Use This Document

In the next chapter, we will introduce the reader to various computer science tools and ideas upon which we rely heavily in our development and deployment of *Nektar++*. The remainder of this developer's guide is then partitioned into three parts.

In Part I, we provide an overview of the various data structures and algorithms that live within the *library* subdirectory. We think of the library as containing all the basic building blocks of the *Nektar++* code, as discussed above. In this part of the developer's guide, we have dedicated a chapter to each subdirectory within the library. Each chapter contains three main sections. The first section of a chapter provides an overview of the mathematical concepts and terminology used within the chapter. This is not meant to be a detailed tutorial, but rather a reminder of basic concepts. The second section of a chapter provides a detailed description of the data structures introduced in that part of the library. The third section of a chapter is dedicated to explaining the algorithmic aspects of the library. Instead of going function by function or method by method, we have decided to structure this section in the style of "frequently asked questions" (FAQ). Based upon our long experience with students, postdocs and collaborators, we have distilled down a collection of questions that we will use (from the pedagogical perspective) to allow us to drill down into key algorithmic aspects of the library.

In Part II, we provide an overview of the many solvers implemented on top of the *Nektar++* library. Each chapter is dedicated to a different solver, and correspondingly may take on a slightly different style of presentation to match the depth of mathematical, computer science and engineering knowledge to understand the basic data structures and

algorithms represented there.

In Part [III](#), we provide an overview of many of the utilities often used in our simulation pipeline – from things that aid the user in the preprocessing steps such as setting up parameter files and meshing to the postprocessing step of field conversion for visualization.

How you engage with this material is based upon your goals. If your goal is to:

- Introduce a new solver, then you would want to jump to Part [II](#) and see how other solvers have been built. Then, depending on what library functions are needed, you may need to step back into the library parts of this manual to understand how to use some of our basic library functionality.

Preliminaries

3.1 Summary of Development Tools and Best Practices

3.1.1 General Resources

Mailing List

Please make sure that you sign up to the *Nektar++* mailing list. This can be done at the following URL:

<https://mailman.ic.ac.uk/mailman/listinfo/nektar-users>

While the name suggests it is for *users* of *Nektar++*, this list is also used to ask questions about *Nektar++* development.

Blog

The *Nektar++* blog (<https://www.nektar.info/cat/community>) provides a broad range of posts on topics such as compiling the code on specific machines, to discussions of *Nektar++* in specific application areas, to recently published papers which have made use of the code.

Contributing to this resource is a valuable way to support the project, as well as promoting your own work.

Annual Workshop

In 2015, we held the first *Nektar++* workshop, which was a great success and followed by a similar event in 2016. It is now an annual event and allows first-hand access to the core *Nektar++* development team as well as a range of other *Nektar++* users.

3.1.2 Version Control (git)

The *Nektar++* code is managed in a distributed version control system called *git*. To obtain the code directly from the repository and add new content to the repository requires the **git** command-line tool (or a suitable GUI equivalent). This is available for Linux, Mac OSX and Windows.

If you plan to work with the *Nektar++* community, you will need to have a reasonable understanding of the *git* software. While it is beyond the scope of this document to discuss how to use *git*, it is important for someone new to *git* to spend time understanding how the tool works. For this purpose, we highly recommend familiarizing yourself with it using any of the many online resources (such as <https://git-scm.com>).

Anonymous Access

Nektar++ may be cloned anonymously using the following command:

```
git clone http://gitlab.nektar.info/clone/nektar/nektar.git nektar++
```

Your local copy of the code can be updated to include the latest changes in the repository using the command:

```
git pull
```

The *Anonymous Access* approach will provide you with a complete copy of the code, but you will be unable to push changes or new developments back to the repository. For this, you should use *Collaborative Access*.

Collaborative Access

Once you are familiar with *git*, have introduced yourself to the development community (see the mailing list information above), and are ready to become a contributing developer, you will need to register an account on the *Nektar++* Gitlab website:

<https://gitlab.nektar.info>.

To use authenticated access, using your new account, you must first upload the **public** part of your SSH key to your Gitlab profile. Generating and managing SSH keys is beyond the scope of this document. However, on Linux and OSX, one generally finds these keys in the `\$HOME/.ssh` directory.

To upload the key, visit: <https://gitlab.nektar.info/profile>, select *SSH keys* from the menu on the left and follow the instructions.

Registering for an account and uploading your SSH key need only be done once.

To clone *Nektar++*, use the *git* command:

```
git clone git@gitlab.nektar.info:nektar/nektar.git nektar++
```

Note the different URL to use authenticated access, in comparison to the anonymous access.

Managing and Contributing code

Code contribution then follows three basic steps:

1. Create an *issue* to describe the code updates you are making;
2. Branch the *Nektar++* master branch and make your changes on that branch; and
3. Submit a merge request on the *Nektar++* Gitlab website that your updates are ready to be merged into the master branch.

More details regarding the concepts mentioned above is found below. The information is also available in the `CONTRIBUTING.md` file in the root directory of the code, or online at: <https://gitlab.nektar.info/nektar/nektar/blob/master/CONTRIBUTING.md>

- Issues - The initial step for those who wish to add code to the master repository is to create an *issue* ticket that describes the defect, bug, proposed additions, changes, updates, etc. This is done on the Gitlab website at:

<https://gitlab.nektar.info/nektar/nektar/issues>

Please ensure you provide sufficient detail when creating the issue to cover all of the following (as required): Describe what is being requested, why it is important / necessary, an initial list of files that may be effected, any potential problems the change/addition may cause, and any other information that will help the development team understand the request and alert others to your work to avoid duplication of effort.

- Branches - The second step is to create a *git* branch in which to do the actual code development. In your local copy of the *Nektar++* repository, run the command:

```
git branch <branch-name>
```

replacing `<branch-name>` with a suitable name for your branch. The naming convention used for branches reflects the nature of the change and is composed of a prefix and descriptor, separated by a forward slash. Prefixes are one of:

- **feature**: used for developments which constitute a new capability in the code;
- **fix**: used for changes to fix a bug in the code;
- **tidy**: used for changes which improve the quality or readability of the code but do not change its function;

- **ticket**: can be used to reference changes which address a specific issue.

Please choose concise descriptors in all-lowercase, using hyphens to separate words. An example **<branch-name>** might therefore be: **feature/low-energy-preconditioner**

Now make your new branch active by running the command:

```
git checkout <branch-name>
```

Confirm you are on the correct branch by running:

```
git status
```

which should print something similar to

```
On branch <branch-name>
```

At this point you are all set to make the required modifications to the code in your branch. As you modify your branch, you can use *git* to save and track your changes.

The following examples show how you can add a file to the list of local files that are being tracked, display differences between the current file and the original file, and commit the file.

```
git add library/LibUtilities/BasicUtils/my_new_file.cpp
git diff --cached
```

Note `--cached` is necessary because `my_new_file.cpp` was staged using the `git add` command above. Note, before you add (stage) the file, you can just use `git diff`.

To actually create the commit from the staged files, run:

```
git commit -m "Added X, Y, Z..."
```

This commits the file to your local repository. The first line of the log message should be a concise summary of the changes. You can use subsequent lines to provide more details if needed. Use `git log` to see the list of previous commits and their messages.

These changes are still local to your computer. To push them up to the main *Nectar++* repository, use the command

```
git push origin
```

3.1.3 Building (CMake)

Nektar++ uses the *CMake* tool to manage the build process for the three supported operating systems: Linux, Windows, and OSX. For detailed instructions on how to use *CMake* to build *Nektar++*, including a list of required software dependencies and *CMake* option flags, please refer to the *Nektar++* User Guide section 1.3.

3.1.4 Testing (CTest)

Before you are ready to have your code merged into the *Nektar++* trunk, you should make sure that it passes the built-in test suite - in addition to any new tests that you have added for your updates. To run the test suite, on the command line type:

```
ctest [-j#]
```

The `-j#` optional argument will run `#` tests in parallel taking advantage of multiple cores on your machine. It is highly recommended that you use all available cores to minimize the amount of time spent waiting for the tests to complete. There are currently several hundred built-in unit tests for *Nektar++*.

For more information on testing, see “Software Testing Approaches” below.

3.1.5 Merge Requests (Gitlab)

The final step in contributing your code to the *Nektar* master repository is to submit a merge request to the development team using the *Nektar++* gitlab website:

https://gitlab.nektar.info/nektar/nektar/merge_requests

Submitting a merge request will automatically trigger the continuous integration (CI) system, which will build and test your code on a range of platforms. You can monitor the progress of these tests from the merge request page. Selecting individual workers will take you to the buildbot website from which you can examine any failures which have occurred.

3.2 Documentation and Tutorials

Documentation for *Nektar++* is provided in a number of forms:

- User Guide (LaTeX, compiled to pdf or html)
- Source code documentation (Doxygen compiled to html)

3.2.1 Dependencies

To build the User Guide and Developer’s Guide, the following dependencies are required:

- texlive-base
- texlive-latex-extra
- texlive-science
- texlive-fonts-recommended
- texlive-pstricks
- imagemagick

3.2.2 Compiling the User Guide

To compile the User Guide:

1. Configure the Nektar++ build tree as normal.
2. Run

```
make user-guide-pdf
```

to make the PDF version, or run

```
make user-guide-html
```

to make the HTML version.

3.2.3 Developers Guide

To compile the Developer's Guide:

1. Configure the Nektar++ build tree as normal.
2. Run

```
make developer-guide-pdf
```

to make the PDF version, or run

```
make developer-guide-html
```

to make the HTML version.

3.2.4 Compiling the code documentation

To build the Doxygen documentation, the following dependencies are required:

- doxygen
- graphviz

To compile the code documentation enable the `NEKTAR_BUILD_DOC` option in the `ccmake` configuration tool.

You can then compile the HTML code documentation using:

```
make doc
```

3.3 Compiling Tutorials

If you are using a clone of the *Nektar++* git repository, you can also download the source for the *Nektar++* tutorials which is available as a *git submodule*.

1. From a *Nektar++* working directory (e.g. `$NEKPP`):

```
git submodule init
git submodule update --remote
```

2. From your build directory (e.g. `$NEKPP/build`), re-run `cmake` to update the build system to include the tutorials

```
cmake ../
```

3. Compile each required tutorial, for example

```
make flow-stability-channel
```

3.4 Core Nektar++ Programming Concepts

This section highlights some of the programming features that are used extensively within *Nektar++*. While much of the code consists of standard C++ practices, in some of the core infrastructure there are several practices that may be only familiar to programmers who have developed code using more advanced C++ features. Below we give a short summary of these entities in order to provide a starting point when working with these features. We begin with more well known features and end with some advanced techniques. Note, it is not the purpose of the following sections to cover in

detail each of these important concepts, but instead to give a brief overview of them such that the developer may look to other, more in-depth, sources if they require further guidance.

3.4.1 Namespaces

Many C++ software projects place their code in a namespace so as to avoid conflicts with other code when included in larger applications. It is important to note that *Nektar++* uses a hierarchy of namespaces for most of the defined data structures. The top level namespace is always “Nektar”, with the second level usually corresponding to the name of the library to which the code belongs. For example:

```
1 namespace Nektar
2 {
3     namespace StdRegions
4     {
5         ...
6     }
7 }
```

With this in mind, when you see something like `Nektar::SpatialDomains::...`, you can usually assume that the second item (in this case `SpatialDomains`) is a namespace, and not a class.

Note: To make better use of the 80 character width, generally enforced across the *Nektar++* source code, we choose not to indent the contents of `namespace` blocks.

3.4.2 C++ Standard Template Library (STL)

Nektar++ uses of the C++ STL extensively. This consists of common data structures and algorithms, such as map and vector, as well as many of the extensions once found in the Boost library that have become part of the C++ standard and are now used directly.

One of the most important of these features is the use of Shared Pointers (`std::shared_ptr`). Most developers are somewhat familiar with “smart pointers” (pointers used to track memory allocation and to automatically deallocate the memory when it is no longer being used) for data blocks that are shared by multiple objects. These smart pointers are used extensively in *Nektar++* and one should be familiar with the `dynamic_pointer_cast` function and the concept of the `weak_ptr`. Dynamic casting allows for safely converting one type of variable into its base type (or vice versa). For example:

```
1 std::shared_ptr<FilterCheckpoint> sptr =
2     std::dynamic_pointer_cast<FilterCheckpoint>( m_filters[k] );
3 if( sptr != nullptr )
4 {
5     // Cast succeeded!
6 }
```

The advantage of using the dynamic cast, in comparison to the C style cast, is that you can check the return value at run time to verify that the casting was valid. A `weak_ptr` is a pointer to shared data with the explicit contract that the weak pointer does not own the data (and thus will not be responsible for deallocating it). Weak pointers are used mostly for short-term access to shared data.

Another modern code utility used by *Nektar++* to support shared pointers can be seen in *Nektar++* classes which inherit from `std::enable_shared_from_this`. This allows a class member function to return a shared pointer to itself. Specifically, it makes available the function `shared_from_this()` which returns a shared pointer to the object in the given context.

While C++ shared pointers are a powerful resource, there are a number of intricacies that must be understood and followed when creating classes and using objects that will be managed by them. For those not familiar with the C++11 (or previously Boost) implementation, it is highly recommended that you study them in more detail than presented here.

3.4.3 typedefs

Like most other large codes, *Nektar++* uses `typedefs` to create short names for new variable types. You will see examples of this throughout the code and taking a few minutes to look at the definitions will help make it easier to follow the code. In the following example, we create (and explicitly name) the type `ExpansionSharedPtr` to make the code that uses this type easier to follow. This is particularly true of nested STL data structures where repeated template declarations would make the code harder to follow. A couple of examples are shown below:

```
1 typedef std::shared_ptr<Expansion> ExpansionSharedPtr;
2 typedef std::shared_ptr<std::vector<std::pair<Geometry*, int>>>
3 GeometryLinkSharedPtr;
```

If you are not familiar with the use of `typedefs`, you should take time to read about them (there are many short summaries available on the web).

3.4.4 Forward Declarations

There are two ways that an existing class type can be specified when declaring a new class in a header file. The existing class can either be declared in name only, or declared in its entirety, before being used. In the latter case, one typically includes the header file declaring the full class. If the new class declaration only references the existing class in the form of a pointer or reference then the entire class declaration is not needed and the compiler only needs an assurance that the class exists. For this case, we can use a *forward declaration* which tells the compiler the name of the existing class. However, if functions of the existing class are called (within the new header file) or the class is used by value, then the full declaration is needed.

Forward declaring a class is achieved as shown in the following example:

```
1 class LinearSystem;
```

This statement tells the compiler the class `LinearSystem` exists and, as long as we only make reference to it as a pointer (`LinearSystem* l`) or by reference (`const LinearSystem & l`), then the compiler does not require any further information.

An advantage to using forward declarations where possible is that the header file does not need to `#include` the entire existing class and any header files referenced within. This allows for a cleaner header file and faster compilation as the compiler can process (often significantly) fewer lines of code.

Note: The full class declaration is most likely needed in the new class implementation file (.cpp) as reference to the existing class's members will presumably be made.

3.4.5 Templated Classes and Specialization

Most C++ developers are familiar with basic class templating. However, many have not needed to use explicit template specialization. This is the process of implementing customised behaviour for one or more of the specific instances of a template when the compiler will not be able to instantiate a generic version for the class, or when different code is needed based on different versions of the class. For example:

```
1 template<typename Dim, typename DataType>
2 class Array;
3
4 template<typename DataType>
5 class Array<OneD, const DataType> {
6     // Explicit coding of class methods and variables specific to
7     // this version of Array are found here.
8 };
```

In the above example, on the first line the generic templated `Array` class is declared. There are two template parameters: the dimension and the element type. The second line shows an explicit template specialisation of the `Array` class for a one-dimensional (version of) `Array`. When explicitly specialising a class, the programmer will write code that is specific to the datatype used in specifying the class. This includes explicitly writing code for one, some, or all of the methods of the class.

It is important to understand template specialization when dealing with the *Nektar++* core libraries so that the developer can determine which (specialized version of the) class is being used, and to know that when updating classes with varied specializations, that it may be required to update code in several places (ie, for each of the specializations).

3.4.6 Multiple Inheritance and the `virtual` Keyword

When diving into many *Nektar++* classes, you will see the use of multiple inheritance (where a class inherits from more than one parent class). When the parent class does not inherit from other classes, then the inheritance is straightforward and should not cause any confusion. However, when a class has grandparents, many times that grandparent class is the same class but is inherited through multiple parents. To account for this, class inheritance should use the `virtual` keyword. This specifies that if a class has multiple grandparents (that happen to be the same class), that only one copy of the grandparent class members should actually be instantiated. For example:

```
1 class Expansion2D : virtual public Expansion,
2                   virtual public StdRegions::StdExpansion2D
3 { ... }
```

3.4.7 Virtual Functions and Inheritance

Within *Nektar++*, classes that inherit from a parent class and override one of the parent class methods, use the concept of virtual functions. The function is prefixed with a `v_`, such as `v_Function()`, as a naming convention. This is a visual reminder that the function overrides a parent class function. For example:

```
1 NekDouble TriExp::v_Integral(const Array<OneD, const NekDouble> &inarray) }
```

3.4.8 Const keyword

While the `const` keyword is known to most C++ developers, it is used (as it should be) liberally in *Nektar++* for functions, function parameters, returning pointers to class data, and variable constants within functions. It is easy to neglect using `const` to mark all cases where a variable should be considered constant. However, its use can substantially reduce accidental errors and allow for accelerated debugging. The `const` qualifier should be used wherever a variable does not change including 1) parameters passed to functions, 2) variables in functions (or classes) that do not change value during their lifetime, 3) on the return type of functions that return pointers to data that should not be changed, and 4) on methods that do not change data within the class. The compiler will then produce an error if we (accidentally) attempt to make a change which violates a `const`.

3.4.9 Function pointers and bind

Function pointers (`std::function`) are similar to pointers to data, except that they point to functions - and thus allow a function to be invoked indirectly (in other words, without explicitly writing the function call (name) directly in code). This technique is used by *Nektar++* in a number of places, with `NekManager` being a prime example. The `NekManager` class is used to create objects of a specific type during the execution of the program. When a `NekManager` is created (constructed), it is provided with a pointer to a function that will (later) be called to generate the objects to be managed when required. While the *creation* function that is provided to the `NekManager` takes a number of parameters,

in many cases some of the values to those parameters will be fixed. To handle this situation, *Nektar++* uses the `std::bind( f )` function, which creates a new function based on supplied original function `f`, but specifies that one or more parameters of `f` are fixed at the time that `f` is created and only those bound parameter values will be used when `f` is later invoked.

3.4.10 Memory Pools and NekArray

An Array is a thin wrapper around native arrays. Arrays provide all the functionality of native arrays, with the additional benefits of automatic use of the Nektar++ memory pool, automatic memory allocation and deallocation, bounds checking in debug mode, and easier to use multi-dimensional arrays.

Arrays are templated to allow compile-time customization of its dimensionality and data type.

Parameters:

- `Dim` Must be a type with a static unsigned integer called `Value` that specifies the array's dimensionality. For example

```
1 struct TenD {
2     static unsigned int Value = 10;
3 };
```

- `DataType` The type of data to store in the array.

It is often useful to create a class member Array that is shared with users of the object without letting the users modify the array. To allow this behavior, `Array<Dim, DataType>` inherits from `Array<Dim, const DataType>`. The following example shows what is possible using this approach:

```
1 class Sample {
2 public:
3     Array<OneD, const double>& getData() const { return m_data; }
4     void getData(Array<OneD, const double>& out) const { out = m_data; }
5
6 private:
7     Array<OneD, double> m_data;
8 };
```

In this example, each instance of `Sample` contains an array. The `getData` method gives the user access to the array values, but does not allow modification of those values.

3.5 Design Patterns

3.5.1 Template pattern

The template pattern is used frequently within *Nektar++* to provide a common interface to a range of related classes. The base class declares common functionality or algorithms, in the form of public functions, deferring to protected virtual functions where a specific implementation is required for each derived class. This ensures code external to the class hierarchy sees a common interface.

In the top level parent class you will find the interface functions, such as `Function()`, declared as public members. In some cases, these may implement a generic algorithm common to all classes. In the limit that the function is entirely dependent on the derived class, it may call through to a virtual counterpart, usually named `v_Function()`. These functions are usually protected to allow them to be called directly by other classes in the inheritance hierarchy, without exposing them to external classes.

As an example of this, let us consider a triangle element (`TriExp`). The `TriExp` class (eventually) inherits from the `StdExpansion` class. The `StdExpansion` defines the `Integral()` function which is used to provide integration over an element. However, in this case, the implementation is shape-specific. Therefore `StdExpansion::Integral()` calls the (in this case) `TriExp::v_Integral()` function. We should also note that while `TriExp::v_Integral()` does setup work, it then makes use of its parent's `StdExpansion2D::v_Integral()` function to calculate the final value. This is only possible if the `v_Integral()` function was declared as protected.

3.5.2 Abstract Factory Pattern

Nektar++ makes extensive use of the *Factory Pattern*. Factories are used to create (allocate) instances of classes using class-specific creator functions. More specifically, a factory will create a new object of some sub-class type but return a base class pointer to the new object. In general, there are two ways that a factory knows what specific type of object to generate: 1) The Factory's build function (`CreateInstance()`) is passed a key that details what to build; or 2) The factory may have some intrinsic knowledge detailing what objects to create. The first case is almost exclusively used throughout *Nektar++*. The factory pattern provides the following benefits:

- Encourages modularisation of code such that conceptually related algorithms are grouped together;
- Structuring of code such that different implementations of the same concept are encapsulated and share a common interface;
- Users of a factory-instantiated modules need only be concerned with the interface and not the details of underlying implementations;

- Simplifies debugging since code relating to a specific implementation resides in a single class;
- The code is naturally decoupled to reduce header-file dependencies and improves compile times;
- Enables implementations (e.g. relating to third-party libraries) to be disabled through the build process (CMake) by not compiling a specific implementation, rather than scattering preprocessing statements throughout the code.

Implementing the factory pattern

The `NekFactory` class implements the factory pattern in Nektar++. There are two distinct aspects to creating a factory-instantiated collection of classes: defining the public interface, and; registering specific implementations. Both of these tasks involve adding mostly standard boilerplate code.

It is assumed that we are writing a code which implements a particular *concept* or *capability* within the code, for which there are (potentially) multiple implementations. The reasons for multiple implementations may be low level, such as alternative algorithms for solving a linear system, or high level, such as selecting from a range of PDEs to solve. The `NekFactory` can be used in both cases and applied in exactly the same way.

Creating a concept (base class)

A base class must be defined which prescribes an implementation-independent interface. In Nektar++, the template method pattern (see Section 3.5.1 above) is used, requiring public interface functions to be defined which call through to protected virtual implementation methods. This is because the factory returns the newly created object via a base-class pointer and the objects will almost always be used via this base class pointer. Without a public interface in the base class, much of the benefits and generalisation of code offered by the factory pattern would be lost. The virtual functions will be overridden in the specific implementation classes. In the base class these virtual methods should normally be defined as pure virtual, since there is typically no implementation and we will never be explicitly instantiating this base class.

As an example we will create a factory for instantiating different implementations of some concept `MyConcept`, defined in `MyConcept.h` and `MyConcept.cpp`.

First in `MyConcept.h`, we need to include the `NekFactory` header

```
1 #include <LibUtilities/BasicUtils/NekFactory.hpp>
```

The following code should then be included just before the base class declaration (within the same namespace as the class):

```
1 class MyConcept
```

```

2
3 // Datatype for the MyConcept factory
4 typedef LibUtilities::NekFactory< std::string, MyConcept,
5     ParamType1,
6     ParamType2 > MyConceptFactory;
7 MyConceptFactory& GetMyConceptFactory();

```

The template parameters to the `NekFactory` define the datatype of the key used to retrieve a particular implementation (usually a string, enum or custom class such as `MyConceptKey`), the base class datatype (in our case `MyConcept` and a list of zero or more parameters which are taken by the constructors of all implementations of the type `MyConcept` (in our case we have two). Note that all implementations must take the same parameter list in their constructors. Since we have not yet declared the base class type `MyConcept`, we have forward-declared it above the `NekFactory` type definition.

The normal definition of our base class then follows:

```

1 class MyConcept
2 {
3     public:
4         MyConcept(ParamType1 p1, ParamType2 p2);
5         ...
6 };

```

We must also define a shared pointer for our base class, which should be declared outside the base class declaration.

```

1 typedef boost::shared_ptr<MyConcept> MyConceptShPtr;

```

Creating a specific implementation (derived class)

A new class, derived from the base class above, is defined for each specific implementation of a concept. It is these specific implementations which are instantiated by the factory.

In our example we will have an implementation called `MyConceptImpl1` defined in `MyConceptImpl1.h` and `MyConceptImpl1.cpp`. In the header file we include the base class header file

```

1 #include <MyConcept.h>

```

We then define the derived class as one would normally:

```

1 class MyConceptImpl1 : public MyConcept
2 {
3     ...
4 };

```

In order for the factory to work, it must know two things:

- that `MyConceptImpl1` exists; and

- how to create an instance of it.

To allow the factory to create instances of our class we define a *creator* function in our class, which may have arbitrary name, but is usually called `create` out of convention:

```
1 /// Creates an instance of this class
2 static MyConceptSharedPtr create(
3     ParamType1 p1,
4     ParamType2 p2)
5 {
6     return MemoryManager<MyConceptImpl1>::AllocateSharedPtr(p1, p2);
7 }
```

In the example above the `create` function simply creates an instance of `MyConceptImpl1` using the *Nektar++* memory manager and the supplied parameters. It must be a `static` function because we are not operating on any existing instance and it should return a shared pointer to a base class object (rather than a `MyConceptImpl1` shared pointer), since the point of the factory is that the calling code does not know about specific implementations. An advantage of having each class providing a creator function is that it allows for *two-stage initialisation* – for example, initialising base-class variables based on the derived type.

The final task is to register each of our implementations with the factory. This is done using the `RegisterCreatorFunction` member function of the `NekFactory`. However, we wish this to happen as early on as possible (so we can use the factory straight away) and without needing to explicitly call the function for every implementation at the beginning of our program (since this would again defeat the point of a factory)! One solution is to use the function to initialise a static variable: it will force the function to be executed prior to the start of the `main()` routine, and can be located within the class it is registering, satisfying our code decoupling requirements.

In `MyConceptImpl1.h` we define a static class member variable with the same datatype as the key used in our factory (in our case `std::string`)

```
1 static std::string className;
```

The above variable can be private since it is typically never actually used within the code. We then initialise it in `MyConceptImpl1.cpp`

```
1 string MyConceptImpl1::className
2     = GetMyConceptFactory().RegisterCreatorFunction(
3         "Impl1",
4         MyConceptImpl1::create,
5         "First implementation of my concept.");
```

The first parameter specifies the value of the key which should be used to select this implementation. The second parameter is a function pointer to the static function which

should be used by the factory to instantiate our class. The third parameter provides a description which can be printed when listing the available `MyConcept` implementations. A specific implementation can be registered with the factory multiple times if there are multiple keys which should instantiate an object of this class.

Instantiating classes

To create instances of `MyConcept` implementations elsewhere in the code, we must first include the "base class" header file

```
1 #include <MyConcept.h>
```

Note we do not include the header files for the specific `MyConcept` implementations anywhere in the code (apart from `MyConceptImpl1.cpp`). If we modify the implementation, only the implementation itself requires recompilation and the executable relinking.

We create an instance by retrieving the `MyConceptFactory` and calling the `CreateInstance` member function of the factory, for example,

```
1 ParamType p1 = ...;
2 ParamType p2 = ...;
3 MyConceptShPtr p = GetMyConceptFactory().CreateInstance( "Impl1", p1, p2 );
```

Note that the instance of the specific implementation is used through the pointer `p`, which is of type `MyConceptShPtr`, allowing the use of any of the public interface functions in the base class (and therefore the specific implementations behind them) to be called, but not directly any functions declared solely in a specific implementation.

3.6 Software Testing Approaches

3.6.1 Unit Tests

Unit testing, sometimes called "module testing" or "element testing", is a software testing method by which individual "units" of source code are tested to determine whether they are fit for use [41]. Unit tests are added to *Nektar++* through the CMake system, and implemented using the Boost test framework. As an example, the set of linear algebra unit tests is listed in this file:

```
.../library/UnitTests/LibUtilities/LinearAlgebra/CMakeLists.txt
```

and the actual tests are implemented in this file:

```
.../library/UnitTests/LibUtilities/LinearAlgebra/TestBandedMatrixOperations.cpp
```

To register a new test, you use `BOOST_AUTO_TEST_CASE( TestName )`, implement the unit test, and test the result using `BOOST_CHECK_CLOSE(...)`, `BOOST_CHECK_EQUAL(...)`, etc. Unit tests are invaluable in maintaining the integrity of the code base and for localizing, finding,

and debugging errors entered into the code. It is important to remember a unit test should test very specific functionality of the code - in the best case, a single function should be tested per unit test.

While it is beyond the scope of this document to go into more detail on writing unit tests, a good summary of the Boost test system can be found here:

http://www.boost.org/doc/libs/1_63_0/libs/test/doc/html/.

3.6.2 Integration, System and Regression Tests

Integration testing involves testing ecosystems of components and their interoperability. System testing tests complete applications and regression testing focuses on ensuring previously fixed bugs do not resurface. In *Nektar++* all of these are often colloquially referred to as *regression testing*. It is not *white-box* in that it does not examine how the code arrives at a particular answer, but rather in a *black-box* fashion tests to see if code when operating on certain data yields the predicted response [41].

3.6.3 Performance Tests

To avoid sudden regressions in performance, *Nektar++* has a series of performance tests which measure the execution times of some sample scenarios using various solvers. These are automatically run by the continuous integration system before merging, always using the same runner. Each scenario is run multiple times, and the average execution time is compared to a baseline figure and tolerance. If the test fails, the developer can investigate the cause of the regression and change the baseline figure if necessary.

To register a new performance test, use `ADD_NEKTAR_PERFORMANCE_TEST( TestName )` in the solver's `CMakeLists.txt` file. As an example, the performance tests for the incompressible Navier-Stokes solver are listed in

```
.../solvers/IncNavierStokesSolver/CMakeLists.txt
```

and one of the tests are defined by the following files:

```
.../solvers/IncNavierStokesSolver/Tests/Perf_ChanFlow_3DH1D_pRef.tst
```

```
.../solvers/IncNavierStokesSolver/Tests/Perf_ChanFlow_3DH1D_pRef.xml.
```

The `.tst` file contains the test definition and metrics, and the XML file contains the test parameters. `Perf_ChanFlow_3DH1D_pRef.tst` contains the following information specific to performance tests:

- `<test runs="5">`

The `runs` attribute indicates the number of times the test should be run. For this

test the execution time would be averaged over five runs.

- `<metric type="ExecutionTime" id="3">`

The metric used for measuring execution time has type "ExecutionTime".

- `<value tolerance="1.0" hostname="42.debian-bullseye-performance-build-and-test">15.4133</value>`

This indicates that the baseline execution time is 15.4133 ± 1.0 seconds. The `hostname` attribute refers to the name of the runner which is used to run the test. This is used to allow different runners to have different baselines.

By default, the ExecutionTime metric will search the test output for the Regex `"^.*Total Computation Time\s*=\s*(\d+\.\d+).*"`, which is used in most cases. If it is different, the `<regex>` element may be used to specify a different expression, such as in this implementation of the metric:

```
16 <metric type="ExecutionTime" id="1">
17   <regex>^.*Execute\s*(\d+\.\d+).*</regex>
18   <value tolerance="0.5" hostname="42.debian-bullseye-performance-build-
19     and-test">60.4946</value>
19 </metric>
```

3.6.4 Continuous Integration

Nektar++ uses the *GitLab* continuous integration to perform testing of the code across multiple operating systems. Builds are automatically instigated when merge requests are opened and subsequently when the associated branches receive additional commits.

For more information, go to:

<https://gitlab.nektar.info>

Part I

Building-Blocks of Our Framework (Inside the Library)

Inside the Library: LibUtilities

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the LibUtilities Directory. We have ordered them in alphabetical order by directory name, not by level of importance or relevance to the code. Since all of these items are considered foundational to Nektar++, they should all be considered equally important and relevant. Along the same lines – since all of these areas of the code represent the deepest members of the code hierarchy, these items should rarely be modified.

4.1 BasicConst

This directory contains two important files for all of *Nektar++*: NektarUnivConsts.hpp and NektarUnivTypeDefs.hpp.

The file NektarUnivConsts.hpp contains various default constants used within *Nektar++* as seen here:

```

1 static const NekDouble kVertexTheSameDouble = 1.0e-08;
2 static const NekDouble kGeomFactorsTol      = 1.0e-08;
3 static const NekDouble kNekZeroTol          = 1.0e-12;
4 static const NekDouble kNekIterativeTol     = 1.0e-09;
5 static const NekDouble kNekMachineEpsilon =
6     std::numeric_limits<NekDouble>::epsilon();
7 static const NekDouble kNekSparseNonZeroTol = kNekMachineEpsilon;
8
9 // Tolerances for mesh generation and CAD handling
10 static const NekDouble GeomTol = 1.0e-02;
11 static const NekDouble CoinTol = 1.0e-06;
12
13 // Factor for tolerance for floating point comparison

```

The file NektarUnivTypeDefs.hpp contains the low level typedefs such as: NekDouble, NekInt, OneD, TwoD, ThreeD, FourD, and enumerations such as Direction (xDir, yDir and zDir) and OutputFormat.

4.2 BasicUtils

This directory contains some of the lowest level basic computer science routines within *Nektar++*. The directory currently contains the following:

ArrayPolicies.hpp	CheckedCast.hpp	CompressData.cpp
CompressData.h	ConsistentObjectAccess.hpp	CsvIO.cpp
CsvIO.h	Deprecated.hpp	DomainRange.h
Equation.cpp	Equation.h	ErrorUtil.cpp
ErrorUtil.hpp	FieldIO.cpp	FieldIO.h
FieldIOHdf5.cpp	FieldIOHdf5.h	FieldIOXml.cpp
FieldIOXml.h	FileSystem.cpp	FileSystem.h
H5.cpp	H5.h	HashUtils.hpp
Interpolator.cpp	Interpolator.h	Likwid.hpp
Metis.hpp	NekFactory.hpp	NekInline.hpp
NekManager.hpp	ParseUtils.cpp	ParseUtils.h
Progressbar.hpp	PtsField.cpp	PtsField.h
PtsIO.cpp	PtsIO.h	RawType.hpp
RealComparison.hpp	SessionReader.cpp	SessionReader.h
ShapeType.hpp	SharedArray.hpp	Smath.hpp
Thread.cpp	Thread.h	ThreadBoost.cpp
ThreadBoost.h	Timer.cpp	Timer.h
Vmath.cpp	Vmath.hpp	VmathArray.hpp
VtkUtil.hpp		

We have used **bold** to denote (as examples) routines at our used throughout *Nektar++*. They are in this sense “fundamental”. Note that this list includes input/output routines (e.g. FieldIO and H5), partitioning (e.g. Metis) and Threading (e.g. Thread and ThreadBoost).

4.3 Communication

This directory contains files related to our distributed memory communication model. In particular, this directory contains files that help encapsulate MPI (Message Passing Interface) routines, as well as the Gather-Scatter (GS) and Xxt routines of Paul Fisher (Argonne National Lab and UIUC).

Comm.cpp	CommMpi.cpp	GsLib.hpp
Comm.h	CommMpi.h	Transposition.cpp
CommDataType.cpp	CommSerial.cpp	Transposition.h
CommDataType.h	CommSerial.h	Xxt.hpp

4.4 FFT

This directory contains files related to the use of Fast Fourier Transforms within *Nektar++*. The two groups of files are as follows:

- NekFFTW.h/NekFFTW.cpp : Wrapper around FFTW library; and
- NektarFFT.h/NektarFFT.cpp : Fast Fourier Transform base class in *Nektar++*.

4.5 Foundations

The two basic building blocks of all that is done in *Nektar++* are the concepts of Points and of a Basis. The Point objects denote positions in space, either on compact domains (normally $[-1, 1]^d$ where d is the dimension in a reference domain mapped to world-space) or periodic domains such as $(0, 2\pi]$ (i.e. in the case of points used in Fourier expansions). The Basis objects denote functions (e.g. polynomials) evaluated at a given set of points.

We rely heavily on the concept of “managers”, and this concept has its start right here in Foundations. When we started our development of *Nektar++*, we realized that a pure encapsulation strategy for Expansions would consist of every expansion holding a pointer to the basis (of some sort) that was used to specify it, and then correspondingly the basis pointing to a collection of points at which it was evaluated. From the computer science perspective, this is all very reasonable except for the fact that there are many cases in spectral/*hp* element expansions in which multiple elements use the same reference space basis functions, and correspondingly those basis functions are often evaluated at the same set of points (quadrature points). This led us to the conclusion that if we were going to have a code that could run over large number of elements (at the time tens of millions) without excessive memory usage, we would have to try to avoid as much of this duplication as possible. This led us to introduce to *Nektar++* two important computer science tools: *smart pointers* and *managers* (i.e. a factory pattern).

Smart pointers were originally introduced as an add-on from the *Boost* library and later directly incorporated into *Nektar++* when they were natively handled by C++11. With the tradition view of pointers, one has a variable that holds an address that points to a place in memory. Typically, in type-safe programming, the way this memory is to be interpreted is denoted by the type of pointer: a double pointer (i.e. `double*`) is a pointer to memory that should be interpreted as a double. The downside of this traditional view occurs when multiple pointers all point to the same place in memory. The question then arises: which pointer (or more properly which thread of control containing a pointer) is responsible for deleting the memory when it is no longer needed? Again, in the traditional view that each pointer points to unique memory and hence when the memory is no longer needed the memory can be released no longer is viable when multiple pointers all point to the same piece of memory. This probably was solved with the invention of the smart pointer, an object that is wrapped up to look like a pointer, and yet contains a reference counter within it. When a smart pointer is initiated and memory is originally

assigned to it, the reference counter is incremented. As more and more references to the piece of memory are created, the increment counter continues to increase. As pointers go out of scope and are longer valid, the increment is decremented. Only when all the references to a particular piece of memory are removed can a *free* (i.e. delete) operation be accomplished. The introduction of smart pointers into C++ and into *Nektar++* were particularly advantageous to us as they allowed us to have lots of different elements, expansions, etc. point to the same fundamental data structure in memory (for instance, a Basis object evaluated at a particular set of points) without having to worry about improper deallocation or memory leakage due to pointer mishandling.

The second important feature we exploited within the redesign of *Nektar++* was the idea of *managers* (i.e. a factory pattern). You will see this use of the term manager throughout *Nektar++*. For us, a manager has the following characteristics: it expects as input a *key*, which gives the manager sufficient information to know the object for which it is receiving a request. If the manager already has one of those objects in storage, it passes back a (smart) pointer to that object. The manager itself continues to hold on to a pointer for the object (in case other requests are made of it for that object). If the manager does not have a copy of the requested object, then it has the ability to generate the object “on the fly” and store it for future use. This last component of the manager is the factory feature that we mentioned earlier – a manager has registered with it a collection of methods that know how to generate the various objects that might be requested of it.

Based upon these two concepts: two fundamental managers that exist at this level of the library are the PointsManager and the BasisManager. These are contained within ManagerAccess.h/cpp, and are defined as singletons and defined globally so that they can be accessed throughout *Nektar++*. Within these files you will find the RegisterCreator method calls that link particular Create methods with various keys. Only in rare cases will these ever need to be modified, and only infrequently possibly added to (if additional Points or Basis information is given).

4.5.1 Points

One of the two primary data structures in this directory is Points. A points object consists of a PointsKey and then extra information needed to facilitate various operations at points. The basic layout of the data structure is shown in Figure 4.1.

The PointsKey object has three basis data members: the number of points, an enum specifying the point distribution, and an optional scaling factor. In almost all of *Nektar++*, only the first two are needed to uniquely specify a collection of points. The latter variable was added as part of the extensions of *Nektar++* to accommodate NekMesh. As stated above, if you pass a PointsKey to a PointsManager you will receive back a pointer to a Points object with its various data members populated, among them a PointsKey identifier for the object. As can be seen by the diagram, the Points object has a collection (array) of three pointers to point positions. These three array pointers allow Points objects to point to 1D, 2D or 3D point positions. Corresponding to the dimension and

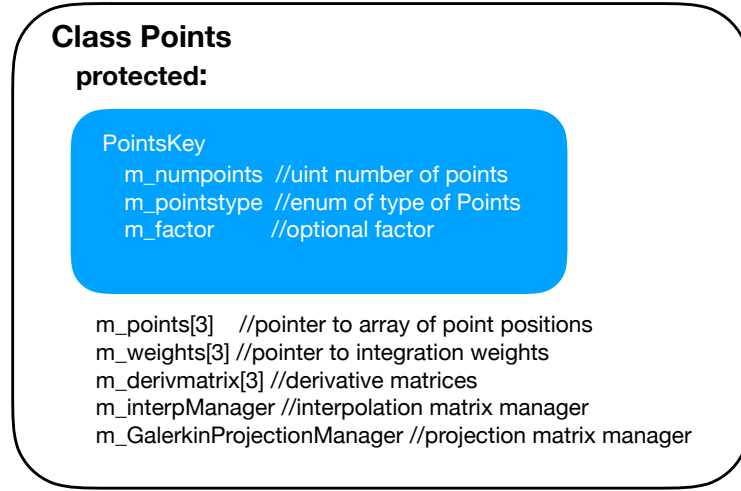


Figure 4.1 The basic Points class data object. It consists of a PointsKey (used by a PointsManager) and various other data members needed for point operations.

associated with each point position is a weight associated with integration. This was done to facilitate both non-tensor product and tensor product constructions. To demonstrate non-tensor product constructions, consider if you were to be dealing with a 2D point set that is natively 2D (that is, not based upon tensor product construction such as the Electrostatic Points), then the number of points in the PointsKey would be the size of each array associated with `m_points`, and only one of the `m_weight` arrays (associated with `m_weight[0]`) would be valid such at:

$$\int_{\Omega_{2D}} f(x_0, x_1) dx_0 dx_1 \approx \sum_{i=0}^{numpoints-1} \omega_i f(z_{0,i}, z_{1,i})$$

where $z_{0,i}$ and $z_{1,i}$ denote the points associated with `m_points[0][i]` and `m_points[1][i]` respectively. The weights in this case are calculated by routines found in NodalUtils via forming a Vandermonde system, solving for Lagrange basis functions that pass through a particular set of points, and then integrating those basis functions to obtain weights. This operation is done sufficiently often that we will try to spell it out after the Fekete Point paragraph below.

If one is dealing with a tensor product constructed 2D nodal point set, one would have:

$$\int_{\Omega_{2D}} f(x_0, x_1) dx_0 dx_1 \approx \sum_{i=0}^{numpoints-1} \left[\sum_{j=0}^{numpoints-1} \omega_i \omega_j f(z_{0,i}, z_{1,j}) \right]$$

where $z_{0,i}$ and $z_{1,i}$ denote the points associated with `m_points[0][i]` and `m_points[1][i]`

respectively and ω_i and ω_j are the weights associated with the two coordinate directions respectively. The tensor product construction above was implemented in *Nektar++* assuming we would create derived nodal point sets for quadrilaterals and hexahedron; however, throughout much of *Nektar++*, we use the tensor product forms explicitly by specifying 1D point sets in the different directions as needed. This particular point will become more apparent when you get to reading the Chapter on StdRegions (Chapter 5). You will encounter, for instance, that a Standard Quadrilateral Expansion (StdQuadExp) requires two 1D Point objects denoting the two coordinates for integration. In this case, the number of points and number of weights match up per direction.

Electrostatic Points: The Electrostatic (Nodal) Points on the triangle and tetrahedron are based upon the work of Hesthaven [37]. They are an attempt to find the minimizer of a potential energy function based upon an electrostatic point source analogy, and provide points that correspondingly have low Lebesgue constant. The point positions as given in the paper are stored in the files NodalTriElecData.h and NodalTetElecData.h. Hesthaven uses a condensed format for the nodal positions which rely on the symmetries of the points (if you count the points in the file, you will see that fewer points are given than are needed to span the polynomial space. For example, for degree one, a single point is given. This point along with its three-fold symmetries represent all three points needed to support the linear space). The routine `CalculatePoints()` expands the condensed format of the points to the full set based upon the one, three (a and b denoting two types of three-symmetries) and six symmetries. Note that the ordering of the nodes expanded from the file does not respect any particular geometric ordering, so we reorder the points using `NodalPointReorder2d()`, which reorganizes the points in vertex points, edge points, and then interior points (i.e. a geometric decomposition that aligns more naturally with the way we organize nodes/modes within *Nektar++*). In Figure 4.2 we show an example of this reordering done for the points needed for expressing a total degree three expansion over a triangle.

Fekete Points: The Fekete (Nodal) Points on a triangle are based upon the work of Taylor and Wingate [63, 64], and are an alternative nodal point distribution on both triangles and tetrahedra. As an alternative strategy to the one mentioned above, Taylor and Wingate explicitly attempt to find a point distribution that minimizes the Lebesgue constant. For their particular point set, the minimization is over the Lebesgue function itself (not the electrostatic potential function, which can be viewed as a proxy for this function). The point positions as given in the paper are stored in the file NodalTriFeketeData.h and NodalTetFeketeData.h. Taylor and Wingate use a condensed format for the nodal positions similar to that used by Hesthaven.

Building Lagrange Interpolating Polynomials: One common operation done in both the case of the Electrostatic Points and the Fekete Points is to build the Lagrange interpolating polynomial associated with a point set. This is needed, for instance, for computing the integration weights associated with a particular collection of points (as mentioned above). This operation is done sufficiently often that we will try to spell it out

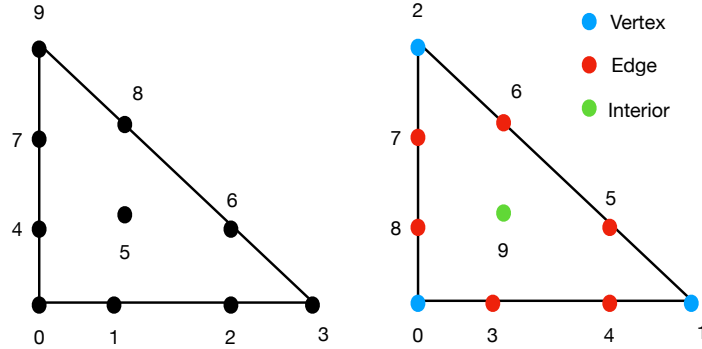


Figure 4.2 Example of how nodes are reordered to meet a geometric ordering. On the left, we show the nodal positions that would be used for building a total degree three polynomial space over a triangle ordered in canonical form. On the right, we show the reordering of those nodes to follow a vertex, edge and interior ordering. Note that in the case of a tetrahedron, the ordering would be vertex, edge, face and then interior.

here. Forming the Lagrange basis functions for a particular set of points, in particular in 2D and 3D, is non-trivial. The most common way of arriving at a set of actionable basis functions is to use a known basis (for which we are able to explicitly write down its form) and find the linear combination of those basis functions that yield the Lagrange basis. For example, let us assume we are dealing with the set of Electrostatic Points on a triangle. The number of points, `numpoints`, will specify the number of “modes” (coefficients) we expect to find. The total degree of the space is given by $N = \frac{(M+1)(M+2)}{2}$ where N is the degree of the polynomials and M is the number of points. As an example: note that when $M = 3$, we get $N = 1$ – that is, with three points we can support a polynomial of total degree one over a triangle. Let ϕ_i denote a known non-interpolating basis function. Although not done in practice, imagine that this is, for instance, a monomial. In 1D, this would equate to $\phi_i(x) = x^i$, and in multiple dimensions this would equate to $\phi_i(x, y) = x^{i_1}y^{i_2}$ with some index mapping function $i = \sigma(i_1, i_2)$ that gives us an index ordering. The total number of basis functions to span our degree N space is given by M . We first form the Vandermonde matrix $\mathbf{V}$ as follows:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{bmatrix} \phi_0(x_{0,0}, x_{1,0}) & \phi_1(x_{0,0}, x_{1,0}) & \dots & \phi_N(x_{0,0}, x_{1,0}) \\ \phi_0(x_{0,1}, x_{1,1}) & \phi_1(x_{0,1}, x_{1,1}) & \dots & \phi_N(x_{0,1}, x_{1,1}) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \phi_0(x_{0,N}, x_{1,N}) & \phi_1(x_{0,N}, x_{1,N}) & \dots & \phi_N(x_{0,N}, x_{1,N}) \end{bmatrix}$$

where each row i denotes the evaluation of our N basis functions at a given point $(x_{0,i}, x_{1,i})$. Since we have selected the number of basis functions to be what can be uniquely resolved by our N points, this matrix is square and invertible. The conditioning of the matrix is based upon our basis choice; hence we know that monomials are not a good choice beyond approximately cubics so in general we use our internal modified basis

for this system. With $\mathbf{V}$ now available, we can form the linear system:

$$\mathbf{V}\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{b}$$

where $\mathbf{c}$ is the vector of coefficients and where $\mathbf{b} = b_i$ is a binary vector where the i^{th} entry is set to one when finding the coefficients for the i^{th} Lagrange basis function associated with a particular set of points. For each Lagrange basis function definition we seek to find, we update the right-hand-side vector and solve the linear system for the set of coefficients that denote the combination of our known basis that yields a Lagrange basis function. Note that since this operation (of “inverting” this linear system) must be done for each Lagrange basis function, we can optimize our operations by accomplishing LU decomposition on $\mathbf{V}$ first, which can be done in $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ operations, and then each solution for the coefficient vector can be done in $\mathcal{O}(N)$ operations through backsolves.

Finding Integration Weights: When the points are related to Gaussian quadrature, the array `m_weights` will contain the appropriate Gaussian quadrature weights computed using point and weight routines found in Foundations (our polymath library functions). In the case of weights associated with points sets that do not lie at the zeros of Jacobi polynomials, we must compute the weights directly based upon Lagrange interpolation through those points. Although this can be done in general for any point distribution, we will focus here on evenly-spaced points (note that when one applies this approach to Chebyshev points, one arrives at Clenshaw-Curtis quadrature [65]). Within *Nektar++*, given evenly-spaced points on the interval $[-1, 1]$ – if only one point is given, then the weight is set to 2.0 denoting a midpoint integration rule; otherwise, the weights are given by the following expression:

$$w_j = \int_{-1}^1 \ell_j(\xi) d\xi$$

where $\ell_j(\xi)$ is the Lagrange basis function defined over an evenly-spaced set of points $\xi_k \in [-1, 1]$. For 2D and 2D nodal point sets (such as Electrostatic and Fekete Points), this same procedure is used. We first form the Lagrange interpolating functions via the algorithm given above (using the Vandermonde system), and then for each quadrature weight compute the integral of that Lagrange basis function using some known quadrature rule (such as tensor product quadrature via Duffy transformation; this point will be more easily understood after reading Chapter 5)

4.5.2 Basis

The second of the two primary data structures in this directory is Basis. A basis object consists of a BasisKey and the extra information needed to facilitate various operations on the basis. The basis layout of the data structure is shown in Figure 4.3.

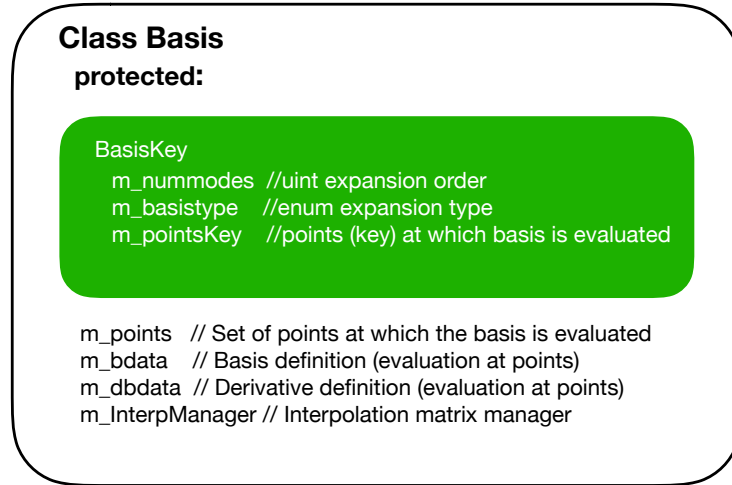


Figure 4.3 The basic Basis class data object. It consists of a BasisKey (used by a BasisManager) and various other data members needed for point operations.

The Basis object consists of a BasisKey (which in turn holds a PointsKey), a pointer to the positions at which the basis is evaluated and then arrays which hold the evaluation of the basis (`m_bdata`) and the evaluation of the derivatives of the basis (`m_dbdata`). The storage layout for these data structures are shown in Figure 4.3. The number of rows is given by the number of modes associated with a particular expansion, and the number of columns is given by the number of points. These arrays are stored as contiguous memory to help avoid excessive memory hopping.

4.6 Interpreter

This directory contains two files, `AnalyticExpressionEvaluator.hpp` and `AnalyticExpressionEvaluator.cpp`, both of which provide parser and evaluator functionality of analytic expressions.

4.7 Kernel

This directory contains two files, `kernel.h` and `kernel.cpp`, both of which are related to the line-SIAC (L-SIAC) filtering [23, 40] of FEM solutions. SIAC filtering takes the form:

$$u^*(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K_H \left(\frac{\xi - x}{H} \right) u_h(\xi) d\xi$$

where u_h denotes the FEM (continuous Galerkin or discontinuous Galerkin) solution and K_H represents a kernel function:

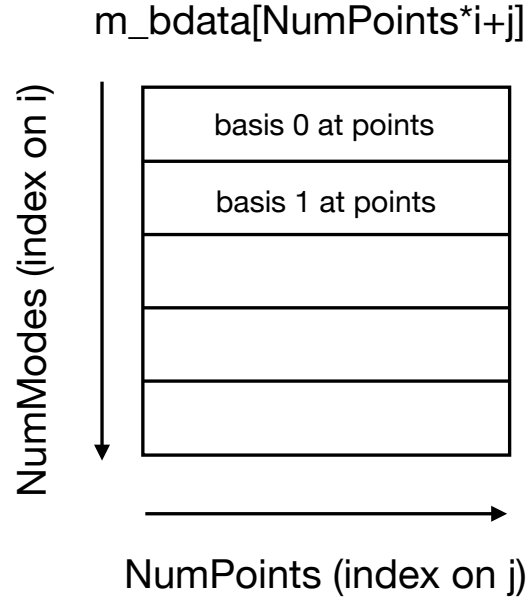


Figure 4.4 Diagram of the basic memory layout of the arrays associated with the basis and its derivatives evaluated at points.

$$K_H(x) = \frac{1}{H} \sum_{\gamma=0}^M c_{\gamma} \psi \left(\frac{x}{H} - \zeta_{\gamma} \right).$$

In this expression, the functions $\psi(x)$ are B-Splines. The two kernel files in this directory provide all the tools needed to construct the B-Spline functions and the kernel function described above.

4.8 Linear Algebra

This directory contains files related to linear algebra operations. Files such as `NekMatrix`, `BlockMatrix` and `NekLinearSystem` are fundamental to many of the operations we do within *Nektar++*. These files represent our attempt to encapsulate linear algebra operations in a way that make sense from the programmer perspective but for which we do not loose efficiency. As can be seen in these routines and throughout the code, we rely heavily on BLAS (Basic Linear Algebra Subroutines).

Arpack.hpp	blas.cpp	Blas.hpp
BlasArray.hpp	BlockMatrix.cpp	BlockMatrix.hpp
CanGetRawPtr.hpp	ExplicitInstantiation.h	Lapack.hpp
MatrixBase.cpp	MatrixBase.hpp	MatrixFuncs.cpp
MatrixFuncs.h	MatrixOperations.cpp	MatrixOperations.hpp
MatrixStorageType.h	MatrixType.h	MatrixVectorMultiplication.cpp
NekLinAlgAlgorithms.hpp	NekLinSys.hpp	NekLinSysIter.cpp
NekLinSysIter.h	NekLinSysIterCG.cpp	NekLinSysIterCG.h
NekLinSysIterGMRES.cpp	NekLinSysIterGMRES.h	NekMatrix.hpp
NekMatrixFwd.hpp	NekNonlinSys.cpp	NekNonlinSys.h
NekNonlinSysNewton.cpp	NekNonlinSysNewton.h	NekPoint.hpp
NekTypeDefs.hpp	NekVector.cpp	NekVector.hpp
NekVectorFwd.hpp	NistSparseDescriptors.hpp	PointerWrapper.h
ScaledMatrix.cpp	ScaledMatrix.hpp	SparseDiagBlkMatrix.cpp
SparseDiagBlkMatrix.hpp	SparseMatrix.cpp	SparseMatrix.hpp
SparseMatrixFwd.hpp	SparseUtils.cpp	SparseUtils.hpp
StandardMatrix.cpp	StandardMatrix.hpp	StorageSmvBsr.cpp
StorageSmvBsr.hpp	TransF77.hpp	

4.9 Memory

This directory contains three files, `NekMemoryManager.hpp`, `ThreadSpecificPools.hpp` and `ThreadSpecificPools.cpp`. The strategy used within *Nektar++* was to preallocate a pool of arrays that could be used for various operations and then released back to the pool. This idea came about through profiling of the code early on – noticing that the new/delete operation of lots of small arrays used for temporary calculations was greatly slowing down the code. Like with our manager idea, we decided to invest in having a memory pool object what preallocated blocks of memory that could be requested and then returned back to the pool.

If *Nektar++* is compiled with `NEKTAR_MEMORY_POOL_ENABLED`, the `MemoryManager` allocates from thread specific memory pools for small objects. Large objects are managed with the system supplied new/delete. These memory pools provide faster allocation and deallocation of small objects (particularly useful for shared pointers which allocate many 4 byte objects).

All memory allocated from the memory manager must be returned to the memory manager. Calling delete on memory allocated from the manager will likely cause undefined behavior. A particularly subtle violation of this rule occurs when giving memory allocated from the manager to a shared pointer.

4.10 Polylib

This directory contains `polylib.h` and `polylib.cpp`. These files contain foundational routines used for computing various operations related to Jacobi polynomials. The following abbreviations are used throughout the file:

- `z` – Set of collocation/quadrature points
- `w` – Set of quadrature weights
- `D` – Derivative matrix
- `h` – Lagrange Interpolant
- `I` – Interpolation matrix
- `g` – Gauss
- `k` – Kronrod
- `gr` – Gauss-Radau
- `gl` – Gauss-Lobatto
- `j` – Jacobi
- `m` – point at minus 1 in Radau rules
- `p` – point at plus 1 in Radau rules

Points and Weights: The following routines are used to compute points and weights:

- `zwgj` – Compute Gauss-Jacobi points and weights
- `zwgrjm` – Compute Gauss-Radau-Jacobi points and weights ($z = -1$)
- `zwgrjp` – Compute Gauss-Radau-Jacobi points and weights ($z = 1$)
- `zwglj` – Compute Gauss-Lobatto-Jacobi points and weights
- `zwgk` – Compute Gauss-Kronrod-Jacobi points and weights
- `zwrk` – Compute Radau-Kronrod points and weights
- `zwlk` – Compute Lobatto-Kronrod points and weights
- `JacZeros` – Compute Gauss-Jacobi points and weights

Derivative Matrices: The following routines are used to compute derivative matrices:

- DgJ – Compute Gauss-Jacobi derivative matrix
- Dgrjm – Compute Gauss-Radau-Jacobi derivative matrix ($z = -1$)
- Dgrjp – Compute Gauss-Radau-Jacobi derivative matrix ($z = 1$)
- Dglj – Compute Gauss-Lobatto-Jacobi derivative matrix

Lagrange Interpolants: The following routines are used to compute Lagrange interpolation matrices:

- hgJ – Compute Gauss-Jacobi Lagrange interpolants
- hgrjm – Compute Gauss-Radau-Jacobi Lagrange interpolants ($z = -1$)
- hgrjp – Compute Gauss-Radau-Jacobi Lagrange interpolants ($z = 1$)
- hglj – Compute Gauss-Lobatto-Jacobi Lagrange interpolants

Interpolation Operators: The following routines are used to compute various interpolation operators:

- ImgJ – Compute interpolation operator $gJ \rightarrow m$
- Imgrjm – Compute interpolation operator $grj \rightarrow m$ ($z = -1$)
- Imgrjp – Compute interpolation operator $grj \rightarrow m$ ($z = 1$)
- Imglj – Compute interpolation operator $glj \rightarrow m$

Polynomial Evaluation: The following routines are used to evaluate Jacobi polynomials.

- jacobfd – Returns value and derivative of Jacobi polynomial at point z
- jacobd – Returns derivative of Jacobi polynomial at point z (valid at $z = -1, 1$)

4.11 SIMDLib

This directory contains the tinysimd library, a header only library. The library is a light, zero-overhead wrapper based on template meta-programming that automatically selects a SIMD intrinsics from the most specialized x86-64 instruction set extension available among SSE2 (limited support), AVX2 and AVX512 (not tested) or SVE for the ARM AArch64 architecture. The library is designed to be easily extended to other architectures.

To use the library one needs to import the tinysimd.hpp header. The type traits routines, needed for templated programming are available in the traits.hpp header. It is highly discouraged to perform IO with vector types. If IO is needed for debugging, one needs to import the io.hpp header.

To enable the vector types in *Nektar++* you need to set to ON the desired extension (for instance NEKTAR_ENABLE_SIMD_AVX2). This will automatically set the appropriate compiler flags. However notice that currently these are set correctly only for gcc and that you might need to delete the cached variable CMAKE_CXX_FLAGS before configuring cmake. You can check that the desired vector extension was compiled properly by running the VecDataUnitTests which prints out the extension in use.

SVE (for instance NEKTAR_ENABLE_SIMD_SVE) is a vector length agnostic ISA extension. However, in order to wrap the SVE intrinsic types with c++ classes, we fix the size at compile time. Therefore you need to set appropriate vector size (NEKTAR_SVE_BITS) according to your target machine.

Note, the extensions are advanced options and only the options relevant to the compiling machine architecture are made available (see NektarSIMD.cmake for more details).

Vector types are largely used with the same semantic as built-in c++ types.

A simple example: if avx2 is available, then this scalar code

```
1 #include <array>
2 std::array<double,4> a = {-1.0, -1.0, -1.0, -1.0};
3 std::array<double,4> b;
4 for (int i = 0; i < 4; ++i){
5     b[i] = abs(a[i]);
6 }
```

is equivalent to this vector computation

```
1 #include <LibUtilities/SimdLib/tinysimd.hpp>
2 using vec_t = tinysimd::simd<double>;
3 vec_t a = -1.0;
4 vec_t b = abs(a);
```

which the compiler translates to the corresponding intrinsics

```

1 #include <immintrin.h>
2 __m256d a = -1.0;
3 __m256d sign_mask = _mm256_set1_pd(1<<63);
4 __m256d b = _mm256_andnot_pd(sign_mask, a);

```

As an example of a method with a complex body with calls to multiple kernels refer to `RoeSolverSIMD.cpp`.

Usage with matrix free operators: the usage of the `tineysimd` library in the matrix free operators differs from the above due to the interleaving of n elements degree of freedoms (where n is the vector width) in a contiguous chunk of memory. You can refer to [55] for more details.

General optimization guidelines: a key factor to improve performance on modern architectures is to limit as much as possible data transfer from DRAM to cache

- use local temporary variables to store intermediate values
- do not call `Vmath` functions more than once, make a loop over the points instead
- if you do call a `Vmath` function, call the `VmathArray` version

4.12 Time Integration

This directory consists of the following primary files:

<code>TimeIntegrationScheme.h</code>	<code>TimeIntegrationScheme.cpp</code>
<code>TimeIntegrationGLM.h</code>	<code>TimeIntegrationGLM.cpp</code>
<code>*TimeIntegrationSchemes.h</code>	Specific GLM schemes, e.g. AB, RK, IMEX, etc.
<code>TimeIntegrationFIT.h</code>	<code>TimeIntegrationFIT.cpp</code>
<code>TimeIntegrationGEM.h</code>	<code>TimeIntegrationGEM.cpp</code>
<code>TimeIntegrationSDC.h</code>	<code>TimeIntegrationSDC.cpp</code>

The original time-stepping interface (found in the parent class `TimeIntegrationScheme`) where implemented by Vos et al. [69] and a detailed explanation of the mathematics and computer science concepts are provided there. After the original implementation, the time-stepping routines were refactored into a factory pattern (found in the child class `TimeIntegrationGLM` with specific GLM schemes covering both traditional and exponential schemes (compartmentalize in the `*TimeIntegrationSchemes` classes). Each GLM scheme sets up one or more (linear multistep methods) phases using the `TimeIntegrationAlgorithmGLM` class, which is where the GLM algorithm is performed using the helper class `TimeIntegrationSolutionGLM`.

More recently Extrapolation, Spectral-Deferred-Correction, and Fractional-in-time schemes have been added as sibling classes to the GLM class (found in the child classes `TimeIntegrationGEM`, `TimeIntegrationSDC`, and `TimeIntegrationFIT`, respectively). The Extrapolation, Spectral-Deferred-Correction, and the Fractional-in-time schemes make use of their own separate algorithm.

4.12.1 General Linear Methods

General linear methods (GLMs) can be considered as the generalization of a broad range of different numerical methods for ordinary differential equations. They were introduced by Butcher and they provide a unified formulation for traditional methods such as the Runge-Kutta methods and the linear multi-step methods such as Adams-Bashforth. From an implementation point of view, all these numerical methods can be abstracted similarly and allows a high level of generality which is the case in *Nektar++*. For background information about general linear methods, see [10].

Introduction

The standard initial value problem can be written in the form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{y}}{dt} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{y}), \quad \mathbf{y}(t_0) = \mathbf{y}_0$$

where $\mathbf{y}$ is a vector containing the variable (or an array of array containing the variables).

In the formulation of general linear methods, it is more convenient to consider the ODE in autonomous form, i.e.

$$\frac{d\hat{\mathbf{y}}}{dt} = \hat{\mathbf{f}}(\hat{\mathbf{y}}), \quad \hat{\mathbf{y}}(t_0) = \hat{\mathbf{y}}_0.$$

Formulation

Suppose the governing differential equation is given in autonomous form, the n^{th} step of the GLM comprising

- r steps (as in a multi-step method)
- s stages (as in a Runge-Kutta method)

is formulated as:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Y}_i &= \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{s-1} a_{ij} \mathbf{F}_j + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} u_{ij} \hat{\mathbf{y}}_j^{[n-1]}, & i = 0, 1, \dots, s-1 \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}}_i^{[n]} &= \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{s-1} b_{ij} \mathbf{F}_j + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} v_{ij} \hat{\mathbf{y}}_j^{[n-1]}, & i = 0, 1, \dots, r-1 \end{aligned}$$

where $\mathbf{Y}_i$ are referred to as the stage values and $\mathbf{F}_j$ as the stage derivatives. Both quantities are related by the differential equation:

$$\mathbf{F}_i = \hat{\mathbf{f}}(\mathbf{Y}_i).$$

The matrices $A = [a_{ij}]$, $U = [u_{ij}]$, $B = [b_{ij}]$, $V = [v_{ij}]$ are characteristic of a specific method. Each scheme can then be uniquely defined by a partitioned $(s + r) \times (s + r)$ matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} A & U \\ B & V \end{bmatrix}$$

Matrix notation

Adopting the notation:

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}}^{[n-1]} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{y}}_0^{[n-1]} \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}}_1^{[n-1]} \\ \vdots \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{r-1}^{[n-1]} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \hat{\mathbf{y}}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{y}}_0^{[n]} \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}}_1^{[n]} \\ \vdots \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{r-1}^{[n]} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{Y} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{Y}_0 \\ \mathbf{Y}_1 \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{Y}_{s-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{F} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{F}_0 \\ \mathbf{F}_1 \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{F}_{s-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

the general linear method can be written more compactly in the following form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{Y} \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}}^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} A \otimes I_N & U \otimes I_N \\ B \otimes I_N & V \otimes I_N \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \Delta t \mathbf{F} \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}}^{[n-1]} \end{bmatrix}$$

where I_N is the identity matrix of dimension $N \times N$.

General Linear Methods in Nektar++

Although the GLM is essentially presented for ODE's in its autonomous form, in Nektar++ it will be used to solve ODE's formulated in non-autonomous form. Given the ODE,

$$\frac{d\mathbf{y}}{dt} = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{y}), \quad \mathbf{y}(t_0) = \mathbf{y}_0$$

a single step of GLM can then be evaluated in the following way:

- **input**

$\mathbf{y}^{[n-1]}$, *i.e.* the r subvectors comprising $\mathbf{y}_i^{[n-1]}$ - $t^{[n-1]}$, *i.e.* the equivalent of $\mathbf{y}^{[n-1]}$ for the time variable t .

- **step 1:** The stage values $\mathbf{Y}_i$, $\mathbf{T}_i$ and the stage derivatives $\mathbf{F}_i$ are calculated through the relations:

$$1. \quad \mathbf{Y}_i = \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{s-1} a_{ij} \mathbf{F}_j + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} u_{ij} \mathbf{y}_j^{[n-1]}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, s-1$$

2. $T_i = \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{s-1} a_{ij} + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} u_{ij} t_j^{[n-1]}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, s-1$
3. $F_i = f(T_i, Y_i), \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, s-1$

- **step 2:** The approximation at the new time level $\mathbf{y}^{[n]}$ is calculated as a linear combination of the stage derivatives F_i and the input vector $\mathbf{y}^{[n-1]}$. In addition, the time vector $t^{[n]}$ is also updated

1. $\mathbf{y}_i^{[n]} = \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{s-1} b_{ij} F_j + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} v_{ij} \mathbf{y}_j^{[n-1]}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$
2. $t_i^{[n]} = \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{s-1} b_{ij} + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} v_{ij} t_j^{[n-1]}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$

- **output**

1. $\mathbf{y}_i^{[n]}$, i.e. the r subvectors comprising $\mathbf{y}_i^{[n]}$. $\mathbf{y}_0^{[n]}$ corresponds to the actual approximation at the new time level.
2. $t^{[n]}$ where $t_0^{[n]}$ is equal to the new time level $t + \Delta t$.

For a detailed description of the formulation and a deeper insight of the numerical method see [69].

Types of GLM time Integration Schemes

Nektar++ contains various classes and methods which implement the concept of GLMs. This toolbox is capable of numerically solving the generalised ODE using a broad range of different time-stepping methods. We distinguish the following types of general linear methods:

- **Formally Explicit Methods:** These types of methods are considered explicit from an ODE point of view. They are characterised by a lower triangular coefficient matrix A , "i.e." $a_{ij} = 0$ for $j \geq i$. To avoid confusion, we make a further distinction:
 - **direct explicit method:** Only forward operators are required.
 - **indirect explicit method:** The inverse operator is required.
- **Diagonally Implicit Methods:** Compared to explicit methods, the coefficient matrix A has now non-zero entries on the diagonal. This means that each stage value depend on the stage derivative at the same stage, requiring an implicit step. However, the calculation of the different stage values is still uncoupled. Best known are the DIRK schemes.
- **IMEX schemes:** These schemes support the concept of being able to split right hand forcing term into an explicit and implicit component. This is useful in advection diffusion type problems where the advection is handled explicitly and the diffusion is handled implicit.

- **Fully Implicit Methods:** The coefficient matrix has a non-zero upper triangular part. The calculation of all stages values is fully coupled.
- **Exponential Methods:** A forward Euler method has been extended to the exponential setting. These types of methods are considered explicit from an ODE point of view. They are characterized by a coefficient matrix of exponential values for each variable. Two first order schemes have been implemented:

– **Lawson-Euler explicit method:** $y_n = \varphi_0(z)N(y_{n-1}, t_{n-1}) + \varphi_0(z)y_{n-1}$

– **Nørsett-Euler explicit method:** $y_n = \varphi_1(z)N(y_{n-1}, t_{n-1}) + \varphi_0(z)y_{n-1}$

where $\varphi_0(z) = e^z$ for $k = 0$, $\varphi_k(z) = \frac{\varphi_{k-1}(z) - \varphi_{k-1}(0)}{z}$ for $k \geq 1$.

While implemented, exponential schemes are not currently seeded.

The aim in *Nektar++* is to fully support the first three types of GLMs. Fully implicit methods are currently not implemented.

4.12.2 Extrapolation Integration Schemes

In addition to the GLMs *Nektar++* also supports extrapolation methods:

- **Extrapolation Methods:** Extrapolation methods allow the construction of arbitrarily high-order time-integration methods based on a series for low-order approximations.

The Extrapolation methods follow the same paradigm as the GLMs, that is both have the same parent class and as such have the same interface.

For more details about Extrapolation methods, interested readers can refer to [21].

4.12.3 Spectral Deferred Correction Integration Schemes

In addition to the GLMs *Nektar++* also supports spectral deferred correction methods:

- **Spectral Deferred Correction Methods:** Spectral Deferred Correction methods allow the construction of arbitrarily high-order time-integration methods based on a series for low-order approximations.

The Spectral Deferred Correction methods follow the same paradigm as the GLMs, that is both have the same parent class and as such have the same interface.

For more details about Spectral Deferred Correction methods, interested readers can refer to [27, 54, 45].

4.12.4 Fractional-in-time Integration Schemes

In addition to the GLMs *Nektar++* also supports fractional methods:

- **Fractional-in-time Methods:** A fast convolution algorithm for computing solutions to (Caputo) time-fractional differential equations. This is an explicit solver that expresses the solution as an integral over a Talbot curve, which is discretized with quadrature. First-order quadrature is currently implemented (Soon be expanded to forth order).

The Fractional methods follow the same paradigm as the GLMs, that is both have the same parent class and as such have the same interface.

4.12.5 Usage

The goal of abstracting the concept of general linear methods and fractional methods is to provide users with a single interface for time-stepping, independent of the chosen method. The classes tree allows the user to numerically integrate ODE's using high-order complex schemes, as if it was done using the Forward-Euler method. Switching between time-stepping schemes is as easy as changing a parameter in an input file.

In the already implemented solvers the time-integration schemes have been set up according to the nature of the equations. For example the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations solver allows the use of three different Implicit-Explicit time-schemes if solving the equations with a splitting-scheme. This is because this kind of scheme has an explicit and an implicit operator that combined solve the ODE's system.

Once aware of the problem's nature and implementation, the user can easily switch between some (depending on the problem) of the following time-integration schemes:

Method	Variant	Order / Free Parameters
ForwardEuler		Forward-Euler scheme
BackwardEuler		Backward-Euler scheme
AdamsBashforth		Adams-Bashforth Forward multi-step scheme of order 1-4
AdamsMoulton		Adams-Moulton Forward multi-step scheme of order 1-4
BDFImplicit		BDF multi-step implicit scheme of order 1-4
RungeKutta		Runge-Kutta multi-stage explicit scheme of order 1-5, (2 - midpoint, 3 - Ralston's, 4 - Classic)
RungeKutta	SSP	Strong Stability Preserving (SSP) variant of the RungeKutta multi-stage explicit scheme of order 1-3
DIRK		Diagonally Implicit Runge-Kutta (DIRK) scheme of order 2-3
CNAB		Crank-Nicolson-Adams-Bashforth (CNAB) of order 2
MCNAB		Modified Crank-Nicolson-Adams-Bashforth (MCNAB) of order 2
IMEX		Implicit-Explicit (IMEX) scheme using Backward Different Formula Extrapolation of order 1-4
IMEX	Gear	Removed (please use IMEX order 2)
IMEX	dirk	IMEX DIRK variant with free parameters (s, sigma), where s is the number of implicit stage schemes, sigma is the number of explicit stage scheme and p is the combined order of the scheme (Note: IMEX DIRK schemes should not be used with IncNavierStokesSolver).
	dirk	Forward-Backward Euler, first order, free parameters (1,1)
	dirk	Forward-Backward Euler, first order, free parameters (1,2)
	dirk	Implicit-Explicit Midpoint, second order, free parameters (1,2)
	dirk	L-stable, two stage, second order, free parameters (2,2)
	dirk	L-stable, two stage, second order, free parameters (2,3)
	dirk	L-stable, two stage, third order, free parameters (2,3)
	dirk	L-stable, three stage, third order, free parameters (3,4)
	dirk	L-stable, four stage, third order, free parameters (4,4)
EulerExponential	Lawson	Exponential Euler scheme using the Lawson variant of order 1
	Nørsett	Exponential Euler scheme using the Nørsett variant of order 1-4 (Higher order not yet properly seeded)
ExtrapolationMethod	ExplicitEuler	Extrapolation method of arbitrary order using a series of first-order explicit Euler scheme
	ExplicitMidpoint	Extrapolation method of arbitrary order using a series of second-order explicit midpoint scheme
	ImplicitEuler	Extrapolation method of arbitrary order using a series of first-order implicit Euler scheme
	ImplicitMidpoint	Extrapolation method of arbitrary order using a series of second-order implicit Euler scheme
ExplicitSDC	Equidistant	Explicit Spectral Deferred Correction method of arbitrary order using equidistant quadrature points and first-order explicit Euler schemes
	GaussLobattoChebyshev	Explicit Spectral Deferred Correction method of arbitrary order using Gauss-Lobatto-Chebyshev quadrature points and first-order explicit Euler schemes
	GaussLobattoLegendre	Explicit Spectral Deferred Correction method of arbitrary order using Gauss-Lobatto-Legendre quadrature points and first-order explicit Euler schemes
	GaussRadauChebyshev	Explicit Spectral Deferred Correction method of arbitrary order using Gauss-Radau-Chebyshev quadrature points and first-order explicit Euler schemes
	GaussRadauLegendre	Explicit Spectral Deferred Correction method of arbitrary order using Gauss-Radau-Legendre quadrature points and first-order explicit Euler schemes
ImplicitSDC	GaussRadauLegendre	Implicit Spectral Deferred Correction method of arbitrary order using Gauss-Radau-Legendre quadrature points and first-order implicit Euler schemes
FractionalInTime		Fractional-in-time scheme of order 1-4 (Higher order not yet properly seeded), free parameters, none, one (alpha), two (alpha, base), or six (alpha, base, nQuadPts, sigma, mu0, nu)

Note: in many cases the first order schemes reduce to either a forward or backward Euler scheme.

Nektar++ input file for your problem will require a string corresponding to the time-stepping method and the order, and optionally the variant and free parameters. In addition, parameters that define your integration in time, the time-step and number of steps or final time. For example:

```

1 <TIMEINTEGRATIONScheme>
2   <METHOD> IMEX </METHOD>
3   <VARIANT> DIRK </VARIANT>
4   <ORDER> 2 </ORDER>
5   <FREEPARAMETERS> 2 3 </FREEPARAMETERS>
6 </TIMEINTEGRATIONScheme>
7
8 <SOLVERINFO>
9   <I PROPERTY="EQTYPE"          VALUE="UnsteadyAdvectionDiffusion" />
10  <I PROPERTY="Projection"      VALUE="DisContinuous" />
11  <I PROPERTY="AdvectionAdvancement" VALUE="Explicit" />
12  <I PROPERTY="AdvectionType"    VALUE="WeakDG" />
13  <I PROPERTY="DiffusionAdvancement" VALUE="Implicit" />
14  <I PROPERTY="UpwindType"      VALUE="Upwind" />
15 </SOLVERINFO>
16
17 <PARAMETERS>
18   <P> TimeStep = 0.0005 </P>
19   <P> NumSteps = 200 </P>
20   <P> wavefreq = PI </P>
21   <P> epsilon = 1.0 </P>
22   <P> ax = 2.0 </P>
23   <P> ay = 2.0 </P>
24 </PARAMETERS>

```

The old schema which specified the method, variant, order, and free parameters as a single string has been deprecated but remains backwards compatible.

4.12.6 Implementation of a time-dependent problem

In order to implement a new solver which takes advantage of the time-integration class in *Nektar++*, two main ingredients are required:

- A main files in which the time-integration of you ODE's system is initialized and performed.
- A class representing the spatial discretization of your problem, which reduces your system of PDE's to a system of ODE's.

Your pseudo-main file, where you actually loop over the time steps, will look like

```

1 NekDouble timestep    = 0.1;
2 NekDouble time        = 0.0;
3 int NumSteps          = 1000;
4
5 YourClass solver(Input);
6
7 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationScheme TIME_SCHEME;
8 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeOperators ODE;
9
10 ODE.DefineOdeRhs(&YourClass::YourExplicitOperatorFunction,solver);
11 ODE.DefineProjection(&YourClass::YourProjectionFunction,solver);
12 ODE.DefineImplicitSolve(&YourClass::YourImplicitOperatorFunction,solver);
13
14 Array<OneD, LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeSharedPtr> IntScheme;
15
16 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSolutionSharedPtr ode_solution;
17
18 Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > U;
19
20 TIME_SCHEME = LibUtilities::eForwardEuler;
21 int numMultiSteps=1;
22 IntScheme = Array<OneD,LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeSharedPtr>(
    numMultiSteps);
23 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeKey IntKey(TIME_SCHEME);
24 IntScheme[0] = LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeManager()[IntKey];
25 ode_solution = IntScheme[0]->InitializeScheme(timestep,U,time,ODE);
26
27 for(int n = 0; n < NumSteps; ++n) {
28     U = IntScheme[0]->TimeIntegrate(timestep,ode_solution,ODE);
29 }

```

We can distinguish three different sections in the code above

Definitions

```

1 NekDouble timestep    = 0.1;
2 NekDouble time        = 0.0;
3 int NumSteps          = 1000;
4
5 YourClass equation(Input);
6
7 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationScheme TIME_SCHEME;
8 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeOperators ODE;
9
10 ODE.DefineOdeRhs(&YourClass::YourExplicitOperatorFunction,equation);
11 ODE.DefineProjection(&YourClass::YourProjectionFunction, equation);
12 ODE.DefineImplicitSolve(&YourClass::YourImplicitOperatorFunction, equation)
    ;

```

In this section you define the basic parameters (like time-step, initial time, etc.) and the time-integration objects. The operators are not all required, it depends on the nature of your problem and on the type of time integration schemes you want to use. In this case, the problem has been set up to work just with Forward-Euler, then for sure you will not

need the implicit operator. An object named `equation` has been initialized, is an object of type `YourClass`, where your spatial discretization and the functions which actually represent your operators are implemented. An example of this class will be shown later in this page.

Initialisations

```

1 Array<OneD, LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeSharedPtr> IntScheme;
2
3 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSolutionSharedPtr ode_solution;
4
5 Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > U;
6
7 TIME_SCHEME = LibUtilities::eForwardEuler;
8 int numMultiSteps=1;
9 IntScheme = Array<OneD, LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeSharedPtr>(
    numMultiSteps);
10 LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeKey IntKey(TIME_SCHEME);
11 IntScheme[0] = LibUtilities::TimeIntegrationSchemeManager()[IntKey];
12 ode_solution = IntScheme[0]->InitializeScheme(timestep,U,time,ODE);

```

The second part consists in the scheme initialization. In this example we set up just Forward-Euler, but we can set up more than one time-integration scheme and quickly switch between them from the input file. Forward-Euler does not require any other scheme for the start-up procedure. High order multi-step schemes may need lower-order schemes for the start up.

Integration

```

1 for(int n = 0; n < NumSteps; ++n) {
2     U = IntScheme[0]->TimeIntegrate(timestep,ode_solution,ODE);
3 }

```

The last step is the typical time-loop, where you iterate in time to get your new solution at each time-level. The solution at time t^{n+1} is stored into vector `U` (you need to properly initialize this vector). `U` is an Array of Arrays, where the first dimension corresponds to the number of variables (eg. `u,v,w`) and the second dimension corresponds to the variables size (e.g. the number of modes or the number of physical points).

The variable `ODE` is an object which contains the methods. A class representing a PDE equation (or a system of equations) must have a series of functions representing the implicit/explicit part of the method, which represents the reduction of the PDE's to a system of ODE's. The spatial discretization and the definition of this method should be implemented in `YourClass`. `&YourClass::YourExplicitOperatorFunction` is a functor, i.e. a pointer to a function where the method is implemented. `equation` is a pointer to the object, i.e. the class, where the function/method is implemented. Here a pseudo-example of the .h file of your hypothetical class representing the set of equations. The implementation of the functions is meant to be in the related .cpp file.

```

1 class YourCalss
2 {
3 public:
4     YourClass(INPUT);
5
6     ~YourClass(void);
7
8     void YourExplicitOperatorFunction(
9         const Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > & inarray,
10         Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > & outarray,
11         const NekDouble time);
12
13     void YourProjectionFunction(
14         const Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > & inarray,
15         Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > & outarray, const
16         NekDouble time);
17
18     void YourImplicitOperatorFunction(
19         const Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > & inarray,
20         Array<OneD, Array<OneD, NekDouble> > & outarray, const
21         NekDouble time,
22         const NekDouble lambda);
23
24     void InternalMethod1(...);
25
26     NekDouble internalvariable1;
27
28 protected:
29     ...
30
31 private:
32     ...
33 };

```

4.12.7 Strongly imposed essential boundary conditions

Dirichlet boundary conditions can be strongly imposed by lifting the known Dirichlet solution. This is equivalent to decompose the approximate solution y into a known part, $y^{\mathcal{D}}$, which satisfies the Dirichlet boundary conditions, and an unknown part, $y^{\mathcal{H}}$, which is zero on the Dirichlet boundaries, i.e.

$$y = y^{\mathcal{D}} + y^{\mathcal{H}}$$

In a Finite Element discretisation, this corresponds to splitting the solution vector of coefficients $\mathbf{y}$ into the known Dirichlet degrees of freedom $\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}}$ and the unknown homogeneous degrees of freedom $\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}}$. Ordering the known coefficients first, this corresponds to:

$$\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix}$$

The generalised formulation of the general linear method (i.e. the introduction of a left hand side operator) allows for an easier treatment of these types of boundary conditions. To better appreciate this, consider the equation for the stage values for an explicit general linear method where both the left and right hand side operator are linear operators, i.e. they can be represented by a matrix.

$$\mathbf{M}\mathbf{Y}_i = \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{i-1} a_{ij} \mathbf{L}\mathbf{Y}_j + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} u_{ij} \mathbf{y}_j^{[n-1]}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, s-1$$

In case of a lifted known solution, this can be written as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{H}} \\ \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{Y}_i^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{Y}_i^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} = \Delta t \sum_{j=0}^{i-1} a_{ij} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{H}} \\ \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{Y}_j^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{Y}_j^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} + \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} u_{ij} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_j^{\mathcal{D}[n-1]} \\ \mathbf{y}_j^{\mathcal{H}[n-1]} \end{bmatrix},$$

$i = 0, 1, \dots, s-1$

In order to calculate the stage values correctly, the explicit operator should now be implemented to do the following:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{H}} \\ \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix}$$

Note that only the homogeneous part $\mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{H}}$ will be used to calculate the stage values. This means essentially that only the bottom part of the operation above, i.e. $\mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}}\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}} + \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}}\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}}$ is required. However, sometimes it might be more convenient to use/implement routines for the explicit operator that also calculate $\mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{D}}$.

An implicit method should solve the system:

$$\left(\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{H}} \\ \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{M}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} - \lambda \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{H}} \\ \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{L}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} \right) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{H}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{H}^{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{H}} \\ \mathbf{H}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}} & \mathbf{H}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{H}} \end{bmatrix}$$

for the unknown vector $\mathbf{y}$. This can be done in three steps:

- Set the known solution $\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}}$
- Calculate the modified right hand side term $\mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{H}} - \mathbf{H}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}}\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}}$
- Solve the system below for the unknown $\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}}$, i.e. $\mathbf{H}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{H}}\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{H}} = \mathbf{b}^{\mathcal{H}} - \mathbf{H}^{\mathcal{H}\mathcal{D}}\mathbf{y}^{\mathcal{D}}$

4.12.8 How to add a new GLM time-stepping method

To add a new GLM time integration scheme, follow the steps below:

- Choose a name for the method, and create a header starting with the method name followed by `TimeIntegrationScheme.h`. Add the header file to the `SchemeInitializer.cpp` and register the method name with the factory, via `REGISTER`.
- Add the header file of the `CmakeLists.txt` in the parent directory.
- In the header file create a new class starting with the method name followed by `TimeIntegrationScheme`. The class must be able to handle any variants, orders, and free parameters. A simple example is in `EulerTimeIntegrationSchemes.h` which has two variants, Forward and Backward. In general the class must have the following methods:
 - Constructor - creates the number of phases required and set the scheme data via a call to `SetupSchemeData`.
 - `GetName` - returns the method name.
 - `GetTimeStability` - returns time stability.
 - `SetupSchemeData` - sets up the Butcher tableau for each phase of the scheme (`TimeIntegrationAlgorithmGLM`).
- Add documentation for the method (especially indicating what the auxiliary parameters of the input and output vectors of the multi-step method represent)

4.12.9 Examples of already implemented time stepping schemes

What follows are some examples time-stepping schemes currently implemented in *Nektar++*, to give an idea of what is required to add one of them.

Forward Euler

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} 0 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 1 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \end{array} \right]$$

Backward Euler

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} 1 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 1 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \end{array} \right]$$

2nd order Adams-Bashforth compact form

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|cc} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \hline \frac{3}{2} & 1 & \frac{-1}{2} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_1^{[n]} \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \Delta t l(t^{n-1}, \mathbf{y}^{n-1}) \end{array} \right]$$

2nd order Adams-Bashforth classic form

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_1^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_2^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \Delta t \mathbf{l}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \Delta t \mathbf{l}(t^{n-1}, \mathbf{y}^{n-1}) \end{bmatrix}$$

Note

Adams-Bashforth and other explicit methods can be written using a compact Butcher Tableau that reduces the number of steps. Throughout *Nektar++* this compact form is utilized. This classic form is shown for educational purposes only.

1st order IMEX Euler-Backward/ Euler-Forward

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c|c} A^{\text{IM}} & A^{\text{EM}} & U \\ \hline B^{\text{IM}} & B^{\text{EM}} & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c|c} \left[\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{array} \right] & \left[\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} \right] & \left[\begin{array}{cc} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \end{array} \right] \quad \text{with} \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_1^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \Delta t \mathbf{l}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \end{bmatrix}$$

2nd order IMEX Backward Different Formula & Extrapolation

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c|c} A^{\text{IM}} & A^{\text{EM}} & U \\ \hline B^{\text{IM}} & B^{\text{EM}} & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c|c} \left[\begin{array}{c} \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right] & \left[\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{array} \right] & \left[\begin{array}{cccc} \frac{4}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{4}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{4}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{4}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right] \end{array} \right]$$

with

$$\mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_1^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_2^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_3^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \mathbf{m}(t^{n-1}, \mathbf{y}^{n-1}) \\ \Delta t \mathbf{l}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \Delta t \mathbf{l}(t^{n-1}, \mathbf{y}^{n-1}) \end{bmatrix}$$

Note

The first two rows are normalised so the coefficient on $\mathbf{y}_n^{[n+1]}$ is one. In the standard formulation it is 3/2.

3rdorder IMEX Backward Different Formula & Extrapolation

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} A^{\text{IM}} & A^{\text{EM}} & U \\ B^{\text{IM}} & B^{\text{EM}} & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c|c} \left[\begin{array}{c} \frac{6}{11} \\ \frac{6}{11} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right] & \left[\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right] & \left[\begin{array}{cccccc} \frac{18}{11} & -\frac{9}{11} & \frac{2}{11} & \frac{18}{11} & -\frac{18}{11} & \frac{6}{11} \\ \frac{18}{11} & -\frac{9}{11} & \frac{2}{11} & \frac{18}{11} & -\frac{18}{11} & \frac{6}{11} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right] \end{array} \right]$$

with

$$\mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_1^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_2^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_3^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_4^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_5^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \mathbf{m}(t^{n-1}, \mathbf{y}^{n-1}) \\ \mathbf{m}(t^{n-2}, \mathbf{y}^{n-2}) \\ \Delta t l(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \Delta t l(t^{n-1}, \mathbf{y}^{n-1}) \\ \Delta t l(t^{n-2}, \mathbf{y}^{n-2}) \end{bmatrix}$$

**Note**

The first two rows are normalised so the coefficient on $\mathbf{y}_n^{[n+1]}$ is one. In the standard formulation it is 11/6.

2nd order Adams-Moulton

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} \frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 & 0 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \\ \mathbf{y}_1^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \\ \Delta t l(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \end{bmatrix}$$

Midpoint Method

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} 0 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \end{bmatrix}$$

RK4: the standard fourth-order Runge-Kutta scheme

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} 0 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{6} \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \end{bmatrix}$$

2nd order Diagonally Implicit Runge-Kutta (DIRK)

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} \lambda & 0 & 1 \\ (1-\lambda) & \lambda & 1 \\ \hline (1-\lambda) & \lambda & 1 \end{array} \right] \quad \text{with} \quad \lambda = \frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{2}, \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \right] = \left[\mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \right]$$

3rd order Diagonally Implicit Runge-Kutta (DIRK)

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} \lambda & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2}(1-\lambda) & \lambda & 0 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{4}(-6\lambda^2+16\lambda-1) & \frac{1}{4}(6\lambda^2-20\lambda+5) & \lambda & 1 \\ \hline \frac{1}{4}(-6\lambda^2+16\lambda-1) & \frac{1}{4}(6\lambda^2-20\lambda+5) & \lambda & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

with

$$\lambda = 0.4358665215, \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \right] = \left[\mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \right]$$

3rd order L-stable, three stage IMEX DIRK(3,4,3)

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} A^{\text{IM}} & A^{\text{EM}} & U \\ \hline B^{\text{IM}} & B^{\text{EM}} & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & \lambda & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2}(1-\lambda) & \lambda & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4}(-6\lambda^2+16\lambda-1) & \frac{1}{4}(6\lambda^2-20\lambda+5) & \lambda & 1 \\ \hline 0 & \frac{1}{4}(-6\lambda^2+16\lambda-1) & \frac{1}{4}(6\lambda^2-20\lambda+5) & \lambda & 1 \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0.3212788860 & 0.3966543747 & 0 & 0 \\ -0.105858296 & 0.5529291479 & 0.5529291479 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & \frac{1}{4}(-6\lambda^2+16\lambda-1) & \frac{1}{4}(6\lambda^2-20\lambda+5) & \lambda \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{array} \right]$$

with

$$\lambda = 0.4358665215, \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \right] = \left[\mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \right]$$

1st order Lawson Euler Exponential

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} 0 & 1 \\ \hline \varphi_0(z) & \varphi_0(z) \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \right] = \left[\mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \right]$$

1st order Nørsett Euler Exponential

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} A & U \\ \hline B & V \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} 0 & 1 \\ \hline \varphi_1(z) & \varphi_0(z) \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{y}^{[n]} = \left[\mathbf{y}_0^{[n]} \right] = \left[\mathbf{m}(t^n, \mathbf{y}^n) \right]$$

**Note**

The phi functions, $\varphi_0(z)$ and $\varphi_1(z)$ are defined as part of the discussion of GLM in Section 4.12.1.

Inside the Library: StdRegions

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the StdRegions Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use the book by Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] as our principle reference. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the StdRegions Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

5.1 The Fundamentals Behind StdRegions

The idea behind standard regions can be traced back to one of the fundamental principles we learn in calculus: differentiation and integrating on arbitrary regions are often difficult; however, differentiation and integration have been worked out on canonical (straight-sided or planar-sided), right-angled, coordinate aligned domains. In the case of *Nektar++*, we do not need to work on truly arbitrary domains, but rather on seven fundamental domains: segments in 1D, triangles and quadrilaterals in 2D, and tetrahedra, hexahedra, prisms and pyramids in 3D. Since *Nektar++* deals with polynomial methods, the natural domain over which reference elements should be build is $[-1, 1]$ as this is the interval over which Jacobi Polynomials are defined and over which Gaussian quadrature is defined [15]. We show in Figure 5.1 a pictorial representation of the standard segment, standard quadrilateral (often shorthand quad) and standard triangle.

The standard quad and standard hexahedra (shorthand 'hex') are geometrically tensor-product constructions defined on $[-1, 1]^d$ for $d = 2$ and $d = 3$ respectively. The standard triangle is constructed by taking $\xi_1 \in [-1, 1]$ and taking $\xi_2 \leq -\xi_1$. The standard tetrahedra (shorthand 'tet') is built upon the standard triangle and has all four faces being triangles, with the two triangles along the coordinate directions looking like the standard triangle. The standard prism consists of a standard triangle along the $\xi_1 - -\xi_2$ plane extruded into the third direction (yielding three quadrilateral faces). The standard pyramid consists of a standard quadrilateral at the base with four triangular faces reaching

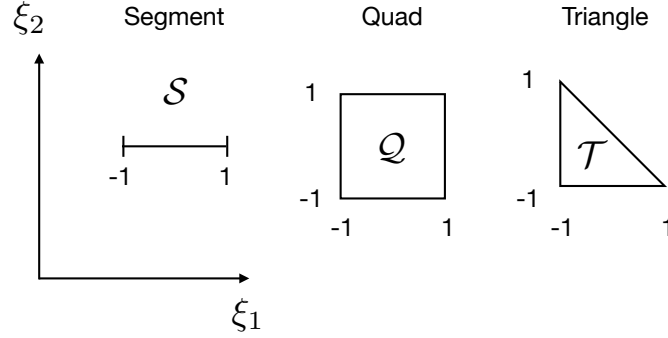


Figure 5.1 Example of the 1D and 2D reference space elements (segment, quad and triangle).

up to its top vertex. We show this pictorially in Figure 5.2.

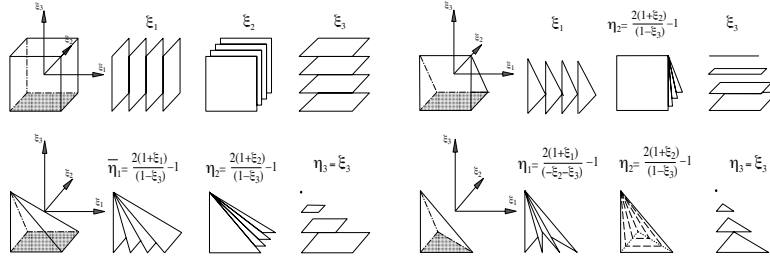


Figure 5.2 Hexahedron to tetrahedron transformation showing how to go from an element on $[-1, 1]^3$ (i.e. a standard hexahedron) to the three other element types which are subsets on $[-1, 1]^3$. Image taken from [44].

Regardless of the particular element type, we use the fact one can build polynomial spaces over these geometric objects. In the case of triangles and tetrahedra, these are polynomial spaces in the mathematical sense, i.e. $\mathcal{P}(k)$ spaces. In the case of quadrilaterals and hexahedra, these are bi- and tri-polynomial spaces, i.e. $\mathcal{Q}(k)$. In the case of prisms and pyramids, the spaces are more complicated and are a mixture in some sense of these spaces, but they are indeed polynomial in form. This allows us to define differentiation exactly and to approximate integrals exactly up to machine precision.

In what is to follow, we describe (1) how you can build differentiation and integration operators over standard regions by mapping them to a domain over which you can exploit index separability; and then (2) how you can build differentiation and integration operators natively over various standard region shapes. The former allows one to benefit from tensor-product operators, and is at present the primary focus of all *Nektar++* operators. The latter as implemented for nodal element types is currently an *is-a* class definition extended from the (tensor-product-based) standard element definitions.

5.1.1 Reference Element Transformations That Facilitate Separability

Differentiation and integration over the standard elements within *Nektar++*, in general, always try to map things back to tensor-product (e.g. tensor-contraction indexing). This allows one to transform operators that would normally have iterators that go from $i = 0, \dots, N^d$ where d is the dimension of the shape to operators constructed with $d \cdot N$ operations (i.e., the product of one-dimensional operations).

As an example (to help the reader gain an intuitive understanding), consider the integration of a function $f(\vec{x})$ over a hexahedral element. If we had a quadrature rule in 3D that needed N^d points to integrate this function exactly, we would express the operation as:

$$\int_E f(\vec{x}) d\vec{x} \approx \sum_{i=0}^{N^d} \omega_i f(\vec{z}_i)$$

where E denotes our d -dimensional element and the set $Q = \{\vec{z}_i, \omega_i\}$ denotes the set of points and quadrature weights over the element E . Now, suppose that both our function $f(\vec{x})$ and our Q were separable: that is, $f(\vec{x})$ can be written as $f_1(x_1) \cdot f_2(x_2) \cdot f_3(x_3)$ where $\vec{x} = (x_1, x_2, x_3)^T$ and Q can be written in terms of 1D quadrature: $\vec{z}_i = z_{i_1}^{(1)} \cdot z_{i_2}^{(2)} \cdot z_{i_3}^{(3)}$ with the index handled by an index map σ defined by $i = \sigma(i_1, i_2, i_3) = i_1 + N \cdot i_2 + N^2 \cdot i_3$, and similarly for the weights ω_i . We can then re-write the integral above as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_E f(\vec{x}) d\vec{x} &= \int_E f(x_1) \cdot f(x_2) \cdot f(x_3) dx_1 dx_2 dx_3 \\ &\approx \sum_{i=0}^{N^d} \omega_i f(\vec{z}_i) \\ &= \sum_{i_1=0}^N \sum_{i_2=0}^N \sum_{i_3=0}^N \omega_{\sigma(i_1, i_2, i_3)} [f(z_{i_1}^{(1)}) \cdot f(z_{i_2}^{(2)}) \cdot f(z_{i_3}^{(3)})] \\ &= \left[\sum_{i_1=0}^N \omega_{i_1} f(z_{i_1}^{(1)}) \right] \cdot \left[\sum_{i_2=0}^N \omega_{i_2} f(z_{i_2}^{(2)}) \right] \cdot \left[\sum_{i_3=0}^N \omega_{i_3} f(z_{i_3}^{(3)}) \right] \end{aligned}$$

As you can see, when the functions are separable and the quadrature (or collocating points) can be written in separable form, we can take $\mathcal{O}(N^d)$ operators and transform them into $\mathcal{O}(d \cdot N)$ operators. The above discussion is mainly focusing on the mathematical transformations needed to accomplish this; in subsequent sections, we will point out the memory layout and index ordering (i.e. now σ is ordered and implemented) to gain maximum performance.

The discussion of tensor-product operations on quadrilaterals and hexahedra may seem quite natural as the element construction is done with tensor-products of the segment;

however, how do you create these types of operations on triangles (and anything involving triangles such as tetrahedra, prisms and pyramids)? The main mathematical building block we use that allows such operators is a transformation due to Duffy [26], which was subsequently used by Dubiner [25] in the context of finite elements and was extended to general polyhedral types by Ainsworth [3, 2].

An image denoting the Duffy transformation is shown in Figure 5.3. On the left is an example of the right-sided standard triangle with coordinate system (ξ_1, ξ_2) , and on the right is the separable tensor-product domain with coordinates (η_1, η_2) . We often refer to this transformation as “collapsed coordinates” as it appears as the “collapsing” of a quadrilateral domain to a triangle. Note that the edge along $\eta_1 = 1$ on the quadrilateral collapses down to the single point $(\xi_1, \xi_2) = (1, 1)$. This, in general, does not cause issues with our integration over volumes as this is a point of measure zero. However, special case will need be taken when doing edge integrals. We will make it a point to highlight those places in which special care is needed.

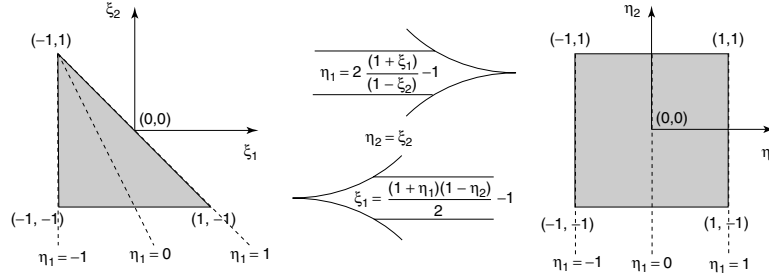


Figure 5.3 Duffy mapping between a right-sided triangle and a square domain.

With the 2D Duffy transformation in place, we can actually create all four 3D element types from the starting point of a hexahedra (our base tensor-product shape). One collapsing operation yields a prism. The second collapsing operation yields a pyramid. Lastly, a final collapsing operation yields a tetrahedra. A visual representation of these operations are shown in Figure 5.4.

This is meant merely to be a summary of tensor-product operations, enough to allow us to discuss the basic data types and algorithms within *Nektar++*. If more details are needed, we encourage the reader to consult Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] and the references therein.

5.1.2 Reference Elements On Primitive Geometric Types

Although the primary backbone of *Nektar++* is tensor-product operations across all element types through the use of collapsed coordinates, we have implemented two commonly used non-tensorial basis set definitions. These are based upon Lagrange polynomial construction from a nodal (collocating) point set. As derived element types (in the *C++* sense), we have implemented *NodalStdTriangle* (and *Tet*) based upon the electrostatic points of Hesthaven [37] and the Fekete points of Taylor and Wingate [63, 64].

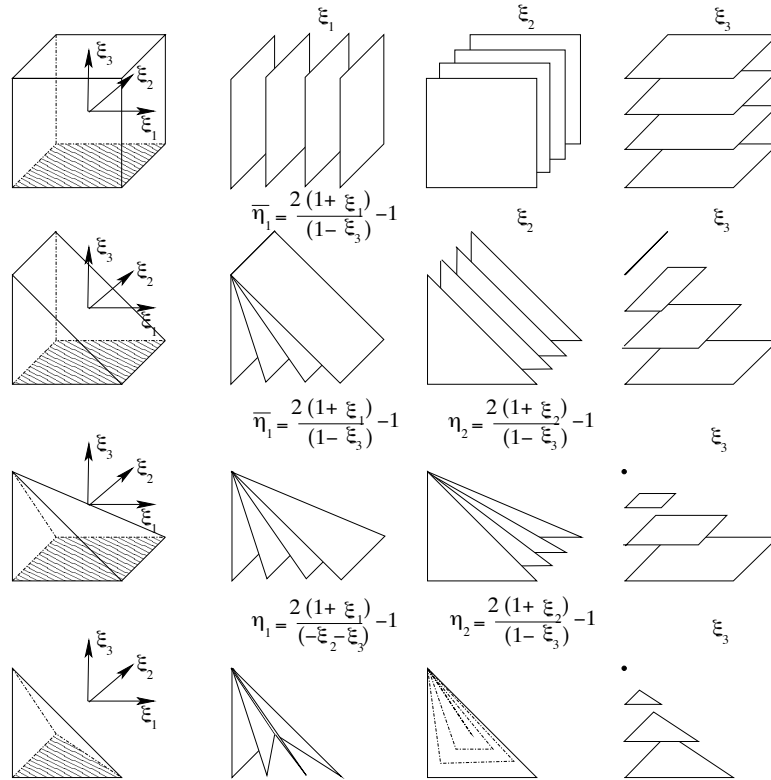


Figure 5.4 Duffy mapping application to generate all the 3D element types. Image taken from [44].

Although these types of elements, at first glance, might seem to be “sub-optimal” (in terms of operations), there are various reasons why people might choose to use them. For instance, the point set you use for defining the collocation points dictates the interpolative projection operator (and correspondingly the properties of that operator) – an important issue when evaluating boundary conditions, initial conditions and for some non-linear operator evaluations. Within the *Nektar++* team, we started an examination of this within the paper by Kirby and Sherwin [46]. There has since been various papers in the literature (beyond the scope of this developer’s guide) that give the pros and cons of tensor-product (separable) and non-tensor-product element types.

5.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within StdRegions

In almost all object-oriented languages (which includes $C++$), there exists the concepts of *class attributes* and *object attributes*. Class attributes are those attributes shared by all object instances (both immediate and derived objects) of a particular class definition, and object attributes (sometimes called data members) are those attributes whose values vary from object to object and hence help to characterize (or make unique) a particular object. In $C++$, object attributes are specified a header file containing class declarations; within a class declaration, attributes are grouped by their accessibility: *public* attributes, *protected* attributes and *private* attributes. A detailed discussion of the nuances of these categories are beyond the scope of this guide; we refer the interested reader to the following books for further details: [62, 53]. For our purposes, the main thing to appreciate is that categories dictate access patterns within the inheritance hierarchy and to the “outside” world (i.e. access from outside the object). We have summarized the relationships between the categories and their accessibility in Tables 5.1, 5.2 and 5.3¹.

Table 5.1 Accessibility in Public Inheritance

Accessibility	private variables	protected variables	public variables
Accessibility from own class?	yes	yes	yes
Accessibility from derived class?	no	yes	yes
Accessibility from 2nd derived class?	no	yes	yes

Table 5.2 Accessibility in Protected Inheritance

Accessibility	private variables	protected variables	public variables
Accessibility from own class?	yes	yes	yes
Accessibility from derived class?	no	yes	yes (inherited as protected variable)
Accessibility from 2nd derived class?	no	yes	yes

Table 5.3 Accessibility in Private Inheritance

Accessibility	private variables	protected variables	public variables
Accessibility from own class?	yes	yes	yes
Accessibility from derived class?	no	yes (inherited as private variable)	yes (inherited as private variable)
Accessibility from 2nd derived class?	no	no	no

¹These tables are based upon information provided at <http://www.programiz.com/cpp-programming/public-protected-private-inheritance>, accessed 6 April 2018.

Within the StdRegions directory of the library, there exists a class inheritance hierarchy designed to try to encourage re-use of core algorithms (while simultaneously trying to minimize duplication of code). We present this class hierarchy in Figure 5.5.

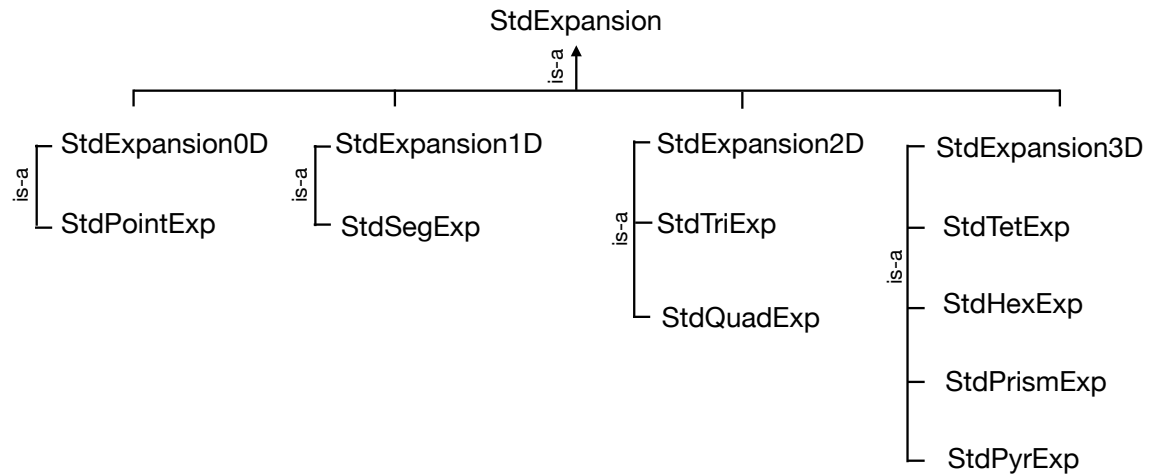


Figure 5.5 Class hierarchy derived from StdExpansion, the base class of the StdRegions Directory.

As is seen in Figure 5.5, the StdRegions hierarchy consists of three levels: the base level from which all StdRegion objects are derived is StdExpansion. This object is then specialized by dimension, yielding StdExpansion0D, StdExpansion1D, StdExpansion2D and StdExpansion3D. The dimension-specific objects are then specialized based upon shape.

The object attributes (variables) at various levels of the hierarchy can be understood in light of Figure 5.6. At its core, an expansion is a means of representing a function over a canonically-defined region of space evaluated at a collection of point positions. The various data members hold information to allow all these basic building blocks to be specified.

The various private, protected and public data members contained within StdRegions are provided in the subsequent sections.

5.2.1 Variables at the Level of StdExpansion

Private: There are private methods but no private data members within StdExpansion.

Protected:

- Array of Basis Shared Pointers: `m_base`
- Integer element id: `m_elt_id`

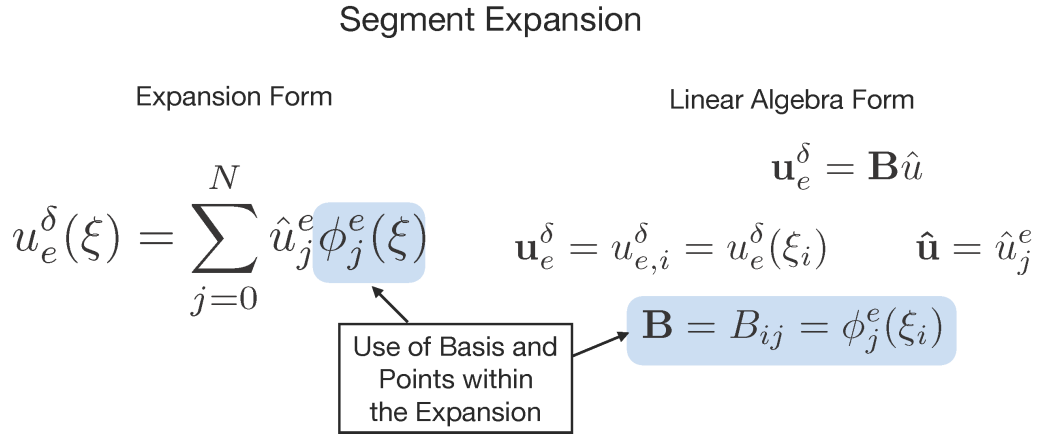


Figure 5.6 Diagram to help understand the various data members (object attributes) contained within StdRegions and how they connect with the mathematical representation presented earlier.

- Integer total number of coefficients in the expansion: `m_ncoeffs`
- Matrix Manager: `m_stdMatrixManager`
- Matrix Manager: `m_stdStaticCondMatrixManager`
- IndexKeyMap Matrix Manager: `m_IndexMapManager`

Public: There are public methods but no public data members within StdExpansion.

5.2.2 Variables at the Level of StdExpansion\$D for various Dimensions

Private: There are private methods but no private data members within StdExpansion\$D.

Protected:

- 0D and 1D: `std::map<int, NormalVector> m_vertexNormals`

- 2D: Currently does not have any data structure. It should probably have `m_edgeNormals`
- 3D: `std::map<int, NormalVector> m_faceNormals`
- 3D: `std::map<int, bool> m_negatedNormals`

Public: There are public methods but no public data members within `StdExpansion$D`.

5.2.3 Variables at the Level of Shape-Specific StdExpansions

Private:

Protected:

Public:

5.2.4 General Layout of the Basis Functions in Memory

5.2.5 General Layout

Basis functions are stored in a 1D array indexed by both mode and quadrature point. The fast index runs over quadrature points while the slow index runs over modes. This was done to match the memory access pattern of the inner product, which is the most frequently computed kernel for most solvers.

Bases are built from the tensor product of three different equation types (subsequently called Type 1, Type II and Type III respectively):

$$\phi_p(z) = \begin{cases} \frac{1-z}{2} & p = 0 \\ \frac{1+z}{2} & p = 1 \\ \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right) \left(\frac{1+z}{2}\right) P_{p-1}^{1,1}(z) & 2 \leq p < P \end{cases} \quad (5.1)$$

$$\phi_{pq}(z) = \begin{cases} \phi_q(z) & p = 0 & 0 \leq q < P \\ \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right)^p & 1 \leq p < P & q = 0 \\ \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right)^p \left(\frac{1+z}{2}\right) P_{q-1}^{2p-1,1}(z) & 1 \leq p < P, \quad 1 \leq q < P-p \end{cases}$$

$$\phi_{pqr}(z) = \begin{cases} \phi_{qr} & p = 0 & 0 \leq q < P & 0 < r < P-q \\ \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right)^{p+q} & 1 \leq p < P, \quad 0 \leq q < P-p, \quad r = 0 \\ \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right)^{p+q} \left(\frac{1+z}{2}\right) P_{r-1}^{2p+2q-1,r}(z) & 1 \leq p < P, \quad 0 \leq q < P-p, \quad 1 \leq r < P-p-qr. \end{cases}$$

Here, P is the polynomial order of the basis and $P_p^{\alpha,\beta}$ are the p^{th} order jacobi polynomial.

A Note Concerning Adjustments For C_0 Continuity

Before going further it is worth reviewing the spatial shape of each node. The term $\frac{1+z}{2}$ is an increasing function which is equal to zero at $z = -1$ and equal to one at $z = 1$. Similarly, $\frac{1-z}{2}$ is a decreasing function which is equal to one at $z = -1$ and equal to zero at $z = +1$. These two functions are thus non-zero at one of each of the boundaries. If we need to maintain C_0 continuity with surrounding elements (as we do in the continuous Galerkin method), then these local modes must be assembled together with the correct local modes in adjacent elements to create a continuous, global mode. For instance $\frac{1+z}{2}$ in the left element would be continuous with $\frac{1-z}{2}$ in the right element. The union of these two modes under assembly form a single “hat” function. By contrast, functions of the form

$$\frac{1-z}{2} \frac{1+z}{2}$$

are zero at both end points $z = \pm 1$. As a result, they are trivially continuous with any other function which is also equal to zero on the boundary. These “bubble” functions may be treated entirely locally and thus are used to construct the interior modes of a basis. Only bases with $p > 1$ have interior modes.

All of this holds separately in one dimension. Higher dimensional bases are constructed via the tensor product of 1D basis functions. As a result, we end up with a greater number of possibilities in terms of continuity. When the tensor product is taken between two bubble functions from different bases, the result is still a bubble function. When the tensor product is taken between a hat function and a bubble function we get “edge” modes (in both 2D and 3D). These are non-zero along one edge of the standard domain and zero along the remaining edges. When the tensor product is taken between two hat functions, they form a “vertex” mode which reaches its maximum at one of the vertices and is non-zero on two edges. The 3D bases are constructed similarly.

Based upon this convention, the 1D basis set consists of vertex modes and bubble modes. The 2D basis function set consists of vertex modes, edge modes and bubble modes. The 3D basis set contains vertex modes, edge modes, face modes and bubble modes.

5.2.6 2D Geometries

Quadrilateral Element Memory Organization

Quads have the simplest memory organization. The quadrilateral basis is composed of the tensor product of two Type I functions $\phi_p(\xi_{0,i})\phi_q(\xi_{1,j})$. This function would then be indexed as

```
1 basis0[p*nq0 + i] * basis1[q*nq1 + j]
```

where nq is the number of quadrature points for the b^{th} basis. Unlike certain mode orderings (e.g. Karniadakis and Sherwin [44]), the two hat functions are accessed as the first and second modes in memory with interior modes placed afterward. Thus,

```
1 basis[i], basis[nq + i]
```

correspond to $\frac{1-z}{2}$ and $\frac{1+z}{2}$ respectively.

Triangle Element Memory Organization

Due to the use of collapsed coordinates, triangular element bases are formed via the tensor product of one basis function of Type I, and one of Type II, i.e. $\phi_p(\eta_{0,i}\phi_p q(\eta_1, j))$. Since ϕ_p is also a Type I function, its memory ordering is identical to that used for quads. The second function is complicated by the mixing of ξ_0 and ξ_1 in the construction of η_1 .

In particular, this means that the basis function has two modal indices, p and q . While p can run all the way to P , The number of q modes depends on the value of the p index q index such that $0 \leq q < P - p$. Thus, for $p = 0$, the q index can run all the way up to P . When $p = 1$, it runs up to $P - 1$ and so on. Memory is laid out in the same way starting with $p = 0$. To access all values in order, we write

```
1 mode = 0
2 for p in P:
3     for q in P - p:
4         out[mode*nq + q] = basis0[p*nq]*basis1[mode*nq + q]
5     mode += P-p
```

Notice the use of the extra “mode” variable. Since the maximum value of q changes with p , basis1 is not simply a linearized matrix and instead has a triangular structure which necessitates keeping track of our current memory location.

The collapsed coordinate system introduces one extra subtlety. The mode

$$\phi_1(\eta_1)\phi_1(\eta_2)$$

represents the top right vertex in the standard basis. However, when we move to the standard element basis, we are dealing with a triangle which only has three vertices. During the transformation, the top right vertex collapses into the top left vertex. If we naively construct an operators by iterating through all of our modes, the contribution from this vertex to mode Φ_{01} will not be included. To deal with this, we add its contribution as a correction when computing a kernel. The correction is $\Phi_{01} = \phi_0\phi_{01} + \phi_1\phi_{10}$ for a triangle.

5.2.7 3D Geometries

Hexahedral Element Memory Organization

The hexahedral element does not differ much from the quadrilateral as it is the simply the product of three Type I functions.

$$\Phi_{pqr} = \phi_p(\xi_0)\phi_q(\xi_1)\phi_r(\xi_2).$$

Prismatic Element Memory Organization

Cross sections of a triangular prism yield either a quad or a triangle based chosen direction. The basis, therefore, looks like a combination of the two different 2D geometries.

$$\Phi_{pqr} = \phi_p(\eta_0)\phi_q(\xi_1)\phi_{pr}(\eta_1).$$

Taking $\phi_p\phi_{pr}$ on its own produces a triangular face while taking $\phi_p\phi_q$ on its own produces a quadrilateral face. When the three basis functions are combined into a single array (as in the inner product kernel), modes are accessed in the order p,q,r with r being the fastest index and p the slowest. The access pattern for the prism thus looks like

```

1 mode_pqr = 0
2 mode_pr = 0
3 for p in P:
4     for q in Q:
5         for r in P - p:
6             out[mode_pqr*nq + r] = basis0[p*nq]*basis1[q*nq]*basis2[mode_pr
7                 + r]
8             mode_pqr += P - p
9             mode_pr += P - p

```

As with the triangle, we have to deal with complications due to collapsed coordinates. This time, the singular vertex from the triangle occurs along an entire edge of the prism. Our correction must be added to a collection of modes indexed by q

$$\Phi_{0q1+} = \phi_1\phi_q\phi_{10}.$$

Tetrahedral Element Memory Organization

The tetrahedral element is the most complicated of the element constructions. It cannot simply be formed as the composition of multiple triangles since η_2 is constructed by mixing three coordinate directions. We thus need to introduce our first Type III function.

$$\Phi_{pqr}(\eta_0, \eta_1, \eta_2) = \phi_p(\eta_0)\phi_{pq}(\eta_1)\phi_{pqr}(\eta_2).$$

The r index is constrained by both p and q indices. It runs from $P - p - q$ to 1 in a similar manner to the Type II function. Our typical access pattern is thus

```

1 mode_pqr = 0
2 mode_pq = 0
3 for p in P:
4     for q in P - p:
5         for r in P - p - q:
6             out[mode_pqr*nq + r] = basis0[p*nq]*basis1[mode_pq + q]*basis2[
7                 mode_pqr + r]
8             mode_pqr += (P - p - q)
9             mode_pq += (P - p)

```

The tetrahedral element also has to add a correction due to collapsed coordinates. Similar to the prism, the correction must be applied to an entire edge indexed by r

$$\Phi_{01r+} = \phi_1\phi_1\phi_{11r}.$$

Pyramidic Element Memory Organization

Like the tetrahedral element, a pyramid contains a collapsed coordinate direction which mixes three standard coordinates from the standard region. Unlike the tetrahedra, the collapse only occurs along one axis. Thus it is constructed from two Type I functions and one Type III function

$$\Phi_{pqr} = \phi_p(\eta_1)\phi_q(\eta_2)\phi_{pqr}(\eta_3).$$

The product $\phi_p\phi_q$ looks like the a quad construction which reflects the quad which serves as the base of the pyramid. A typical memory access looks like

```

1 mode_pqr = 0
2 for p in P:
3     for q in P - p:
4         for r in P - p - r:
5             out[mode_pqr*nq + r] = basis0[p*nq]*basis1[q*nq]*basis2[
mode_pqr*nq + r]
6             mode_pqr += (P - p - r)

```

5.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within StdRegions

As stated in the introduction, this section of this guide is structured in question-answer form. This is not meant to capture every possible question asked of us on the *Nektar++* users list; however, this set of (ever-growing) questions are meant to capture the “big ideas” that developers want to know about how StdRegions work and how they can be used.

In this section, we will through question and answer format try to cover the following basic algorithmic concepts that are found within the StdRegions part of the library:

- xx

With the big ideas in place, let us now start into our questions.

Question:

Inside the Library: SpatialDomains

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the SpatialDomains Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use the book by Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] as our principle reference. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the SpatialDomains Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

The SpatialDomains Directory and its corresponding class definitions serve two principal purposes:

1. To hold the elemental geometric information (i.e. vertex information, curve information and reference-to-world mapping information); and
2. To facility reading in and writing out geometry-related information.

When designing Nektar++, developing a class hierarchy for StdRegions (those fundamental domains over which we define integration and differentiation) and LocalRegions (i.e. elements in world-space) was fairly straightforward following [44]. For instance, a triangle in world-space *is-a* standard triangle. The first question that arose was where to store geometric information, as information within the LocalRegions element or as information encapsulated from the element so that multiple Expansions could all point to the same geometric information. The decision we made was to store geometric information – that is, the vertex information in world-space that defines an element and the edge and face curvature information – in its own data structure that could be shared by multiple Expansions (functions) over the same domain (element) in world-space. Hence SpatialDomains started as the directory containing Geometry and GeomFactors class definitions to meet the first item listed above. A LocalRegion *is-a* StdRegion and *has-a* SpatialDomain (i.e. Geometry and GeomFactors).

We then realized that in order to jump-start the process of constructing elements and combining them together into MultiRegions (collections of elements that represent a (sub)-domain of interest), we needed devise a light-weight data structure into which we could load geometric information from our geometry file and from which we could then construct Expansions (with their mappings, etc.). The light-weight data structure we devised was MeshGraph, and it was meant to meet the second item listed above.

6.1 The Fundamentals Behind SpatialDomains

As mentioned in our discussions of the fundamentals of StdRegions (i.e. Section 5.1), one of the most fundamental tools from calculus that we regularly employ is the idea of mapping from general domains to canonical domains. General domains are the regions in world space over which we want to solve engineering problems, and thus want to be able to take derivatives and compute integrals. But as we learned in calculus, it is often non-trivial to accomplish differentiation or integration over these regions. We resort to the mapping arbitrary domains back to canonical domains over which we can define various operations. We introduced our canonical domains, which we call standard regions, in Chapter 5. We refer to our world space regions as local regions, which we will present in Chapter 7. How these two are connected are via SpatialDomains.

As will be further discussed in Section 6.2, there are two fundamental purposes served by SpatialDomains: (1) holding basic geometric information (e.g. vertex values and curvature information) and (2) holding geometric factors information. The former information relates to the geometric way we map standard regions to local regions. The latter information relates to how we use this map to allow us to accomplish differentiation and integration of functions in world space via operations on standard regions with associated map (geometric) information. In this section, we will highlight the important mathematical principles that are relevant to this section. We will first discuss the mapping itself: vertex and curvature information and how it is used. We will then discuss how geometric factor information is computed. We break this down into two subsections following the convention of the code. We will first discussed what is labeled in the code as *Regular*, and denotes mappings between elements of the same dimension (i.e. standard region triangles to 2D triangles in world space). Although our notation will be slightly different, we will use [44] as our guide; we refer the interested reader there for a more in-depth discussion of these topics. We will then discuss what is labeled in the code as *Deformed*, and denotes the mappings between standard region elements and their world space variants in a higher embedded dimension (i.e. standard region triangles to triangles lying on a surface embedded in a 3D space representing a manifold). Since the manifold work within *Nektar++* was introduced as an area of research, we will use [14] as our guide. The notation therein is slightly different than that of [44] because of the necessity to use broader coordinate system transformation principles (e.g. covariance and contravariance of vectors, etc.). We will abbreviate the detailed mathematical derivations here, but encourage the interested reader to review [14] and references therein as needed. For those unfamiliar with covariant and contravariant spaces, we encourage the reader to review [9].

6.1.1 Vertex and Curvature Mapping Information

When we load in a mesh into *Nektar++*, elements are often described in world space based upon their vertex positions. In traditional FEM formats, this can be as simple as a list of d -dimensional vertex coordinates, followed by a list of element definitions: each row holding four integers (in the case of tetrahedra) denoting the four vertices in the vertex list that comprise an element. *Nektar++* uses an HTML-based geometry file with a more rich definition of the basic geometric information that just described; we encourage developers and users to review our User Guide(s) for the organization and conventions used within our geometry files. For the purposes of this section, the important pieces of information are as follows. Let us assume that for each element, we have through our MeshGraph data structure (described in the next section) access to the vertex positions of an element. In general, each vertex $\vec{v}_j$ is a n -tuple of dimension d denoting the dimension in which the points are specified in world space. For example, when considering a quadrilateral on the 2D plane, our vertex points each contain two coordinates denoting the x - and y -coordinates. As shown in Figure 6.1, we can express the mapping between a world space quadrilateral and the standard region quadrilateral on $[-1, 1] \times [-1, 1]$ via a bi-linear mapping function $\chi(\vec{\xi})$.

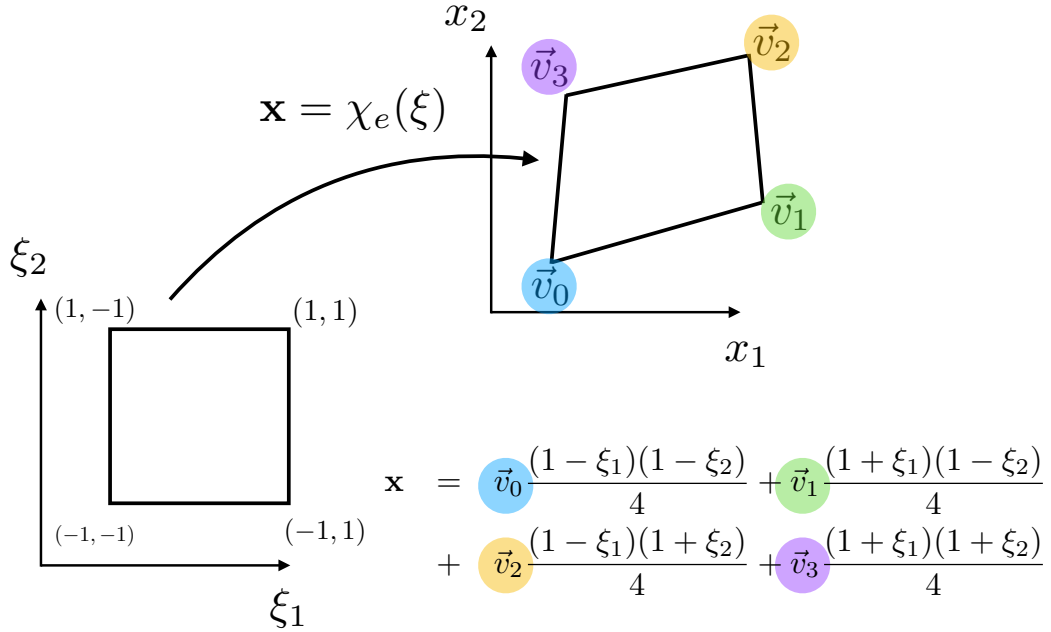


Figure 6.1 Reference space to world space mapping of a 2D quadrilateral to a straight-sided (2D) quadrilateral in the plane via a bi-linear (i.e., $Q(1)$) mapping.

In the case of segments, this mapping function $\chi(\vec{\xi})$ is a function of one variable and is merely an affine mapping. In two dimensions, the mapping of a straight-sided triangle is a linear mapping (i.e., $P(1)$ in the language of traditional finite elements – a total degree $k = 1$ space) and the mapping of a straight-sided quadrilateral is a bi-linear

mapping (i.e., $Q(1)$ in the language of traditional finite elements – a degree $k = 1$ map along each coordinate direction combined through tensor-product). In three dimensions, the mapping of a planar-sided tetrahedron is also a linear mapping, the mapping of a planar-sided hexahedron is a tri-linear mapping, and the prism and pyramid are mathematically somewhere in-between these two canonical types as given in [44]. The key point is that in the case of straight-sided (or planar-sided) elements, the mapping between reference space and world space can be deduced solely based upon the vertex positions. Furthermore in these cases, as denoted in Figure 6.1, the form of the mapping function is solely determined by type (shape) of the element. If only planar-sided elements are used, pre-computation involving the mapping functions can be done so that when vertex value information is available, all the data structures can be finalized.

As presented in ??, there are many components of *Nektar++* that capitalize on the geometric nature of the basis functions we use. We often speak in terms of vertex modes, edge modes, face modes and internal modes – i.e., the coefficients that provide the weighting of vertex basis functions, edge basis functions, etc. It is beyond the scope of this developer guide to go into all the mathematical details of their definitions, etc. However, we do want to point out a few common developer-level features that are important. In the case of straight-sided (planar-sided) elements, the aforementioned mapping functions can be fully described by vertex basis functions. The real benefit of this approach (of connecting the mapping representation with a geometric basis) is seen when moving to curved elements.

Consider Figure 6.2 in which we modify the example given above to accommodate on curved edge. From the mathematical perspective, we know that the inclusion of this (quadratic) edge will require our mapping function to now be in $Q(2)$. If we were not to use the fact that our basis is geometric in nature, we would be forced to form a Vandermonde system for a set of coefficients used to combine the tensor-product quadratic functions (nine basis functions in all), and use the five pieces of information available to us (the four vertex values and the one point $\vec{c}_0$ that informs the curve on edge 1. As shown in Figure 6.2, we would expect that this updated (to accommodate a curved edge) mapping function to consist of the bi-linear mapping function with an additional term $C_1(\xi_1, \xi_2)$ that encompasses the new curvature information.

The basis we use, following [44], allows us to precisely specify $C_1(\xi_1, \xi_2)$ using the edge basis function associated with edge 1, and to use the point value $\vec{c}_0$ to specify the coefficient to be used. In the figure, we assume that the form of the function is collocating, but in practice it need not be so.

In practice, edge (and face) information can be given either as a set of point positions in world space that correspond to a particular point distribution in the reference element (i.e., evenly-spaced points or GLL points) or modal information corresponding to the geometric basis we use internally. Our geometric file formats assume the former – that curve information is provided to us as physical values at specified positions from which we infer (calculate) the modal values and store these values within *SpatialDomain* data

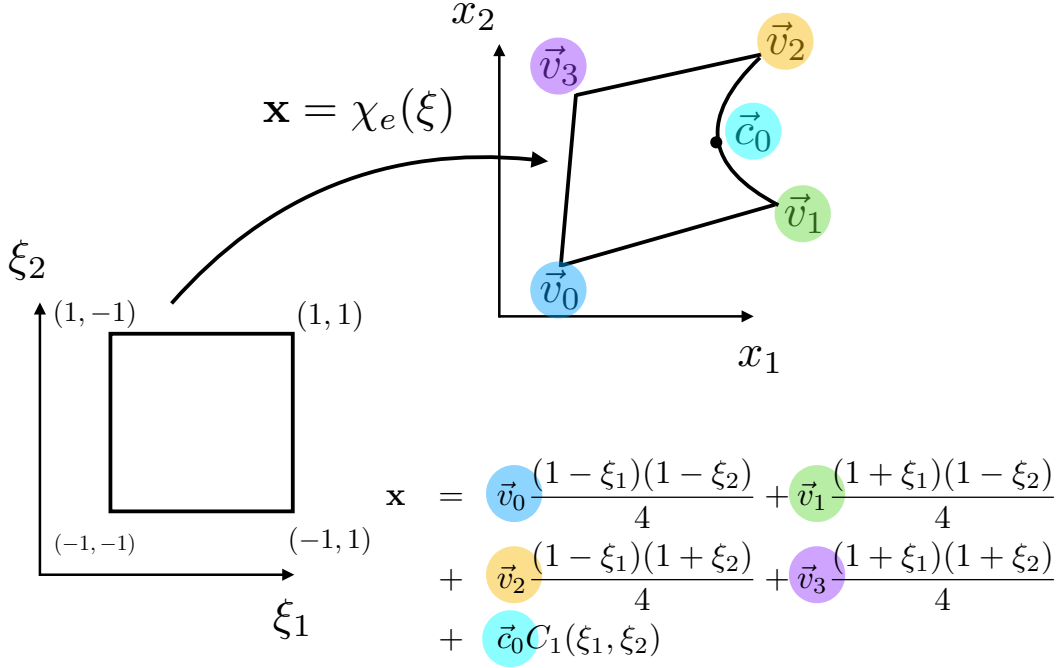


Figure 6.2 Reference space to world space mapping of a 2D quadrilateral to a curve (2D) quadrilateral in the plane via a bi-quadratic (i.e., $Q(2)$) mapping.

structures.

Assuming we now have, for each element, a way of specifying the mapping function $\chi(\vec{\xi})$, we can now move to how we compute the geometric factors for regular as well as for deformed mappings. We use the term “regular mappings” to refer to mappings from reference space elements to world space elements with the same dimension. For instance, a collection of triangles that lie in a plane can be represented by vertex coordinates that are only 2-tuples and the mappings between the reference space triangle and the world space triangle does not need to consider a larger embedded dimension. This was a fundamental assumption of the original Nektar code: segments lived on the 1D line, triangles and quadrilaterals lived on the 2D plane and that hexahedra, tetrahedra, etc., lived in the 3D volume. When redesigning *Nektar++*, we purposefully enabled geometric entities to live in a high-dimensional embedding space, different from their parameterized dimension. For instance, in *Nektar++*, it is possible to define segment expansions (functions that live over one dimensional parameterized curves) that are embedded in 3D. The same is true for quadrilaterals and triangles – although their parameterized dimension is two, both may live in a higher dimensional embedding space and thus represent a *manifold* of co-dimension one in that space. For mappings that maintain the co-dimension is the opposite of the dimension (i.e., quadrilateral in a plane represented by vertices with two coordinates mapped to a two parameter reference quadrilateral), we keep to the mapping conventions originally outlined in [44] and denote these mapping operations in the code

by the enumerated value *Regular*; for mappings in which the co-dimension is greater than zero, we following the modified convention outlined in [14] and denote these mapping operations in the code by the enumerated value *Deformed*.

6.1.2 Regular Mappings: Geometric Factors

Following [44], we assume that the vertex positions of an element in world space are given by $\vec{x} = x_i$ and that our reference space coordinates are given by $\vec{\xi} = \xi_j$, there i and j run from zero to $dim - 1$ where dim is the parameter dimension of the element (e.g. for a triangle, $dim = 2$).

The Jacobian (matrix) is correspondingly defined as:

$$\mathbf{J} = \frac{\partial x_i}{\partial \xi_j}. \quad (6.1)$$

Note that this matrix is always square, but also note that it is not always constant across an element. Only in special cases such as the linear mapping of triangles and tetrahedra does the Jacobian matrix reduce to a constant (matrix) over the entire element. In general, this matrix can be evaluated at any point over the element for which it is constructed.

There are two (high-level) times in which this information is needed: when computing derivatives and when computing integrals. When computing derivatives, we employ the chain rule for differentiation, which in Einstein notation is given by the following expression:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} = \frac{\partial \xi_j}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_j}.$$

Note that this expression requires the reciprocal of the expression above – that is, $\mathbf{J}^{-1}$. The polynomial mappings we use in *Nektar++* are defined in terms of their forward mappings (reference to world). If the determinant of the mapping is non-zero, the inverse of the mapping exists but is not available analytically (except in special cases). As a consequence, we in general limit the places at which we compute the inverse of the Jacobian. Typically, the quadrature point positions are the places at which you need these values (since it is at these points we take physical space derivatives and then use integration rules to construct weak form operators). Thus, procedurally, we do the following:

1. For a given element, compute the Jacobian matrix using the expression given in Equation 6.2 for each quadrature point position on the element (or for any points positions within an element at which it is needed).

2. Explicitly form the inverse of the matrix at each point position.

Because we accomplish the inversion of the Jacobian matrix at particular positions, this introduces an approximation to this computation. Although the inverse Jacobian matrix can be computed exactly at each point – when we then correspondingly use this information in the inner product over an element – we are in effect assuming that we are using a polynomial interpolative projection of this operator. The approximation error is introduced at the point of our quadrature approximation. Although the forward mapping is polynomial and hence we could find a polynomial integration rule and number of points/weights to integrate our bilinear forms exactly, our use of the inverse mapping in our bilinear forms means that we can only approximate our integrals. From our experiments, the impact of this is negligible in most cases, and only becomes a concern in highly curved geometries. In such cases, over-integration might be required to minimize the errors introduced due to this approximation.

The other place at which we need the Jacobian matrix is to compute its determinant to be used in integration. The determinant of the Jacobian matrix (sometimes also called “the Jacobian” of the mapping) provides us the scaling of the metric terms used in integration. In all our computations, we assume that the determinant of the Jacobian matrix is strictly positive. In the area of mesh generation, the value of the determinant is used to estimate how good or bad the quality of the mapping is – in effect, if you have reasonable elements in your mesh. Negative Jacobian elements are inadmissible but even elements with small Jacobian determinants might cause issues. At the level of the library and solvers, we assume that these issues have been addressed by the user prior to attempting to run *Nektar++* solvers and interpret their results.

6.1.3 Deformed Mappings: Geometric Factors

Following [14], we again assume that the vertex positions of an element in world space are given by $\vec{x} = x_i$ and that our reference space coordinates are given by $\vec{\xi} = \xi_j$, where i runs from zero to $dim - 1$ where dim is the embedding dimension and j runs from zero to $M - 1$ where M is the parameter dimension of the element (e.g. for a triangle on a manifold embedded in 3D with vertex values in 3D, $dim = 3$ whilst $M = 2$).

The Jacobian (matrix) is correspondingly defined as:

$$\mathbf{J} = J_j^i = \frac{\partial x_i}{\partial \xi_j}. \quad (6.2)$$

In this case, we use the notational conventions of [4] which delineate covariant and contravariant forms. In general, this matrix is not square, also note that it is not always constant across an element. In general, this matrix can be evaluated at any point over the element for which it is constructed. The metric tensor related to this transformation can be formed as:

$$\mathbf{g} = \mathbf{J}\mathbf{J}^T$$

and the Jacobian factor associated with this mapping is then given by:

$$g = \det \mathbf{g}.$$

Because various mappings are necessary when dealing with covariant and contravariant vectors, we have encapsulated all these routines into the directory `GlobalMapping` (see Chapter 10). At this stage, we do not implement general Piola transformations [52] that further respect $H(\text{div})$ and $H(\text{curl})$ constraints on these mappings as would be needed in solid mechanics or electromagnetics; however, there is nothing inherent within the *Nektar++* framework that would preclude someone from adding these additional features as necessary.

6.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within SpatialDomains

As mentioned earlier, in almost all object-oriented languages (which includes *C++*), there exists the concepts of *class attributes* and *object attributes*. For a summary of attributes and access patterns, please review Section 5.2. Within the `SpatialDomains` directory of the library, there exists a class inheritance hierarchy designed to try to encourage re-use of core algorithms (while simultaneously trying to minimize duplication of code). We present this class hierarchy in Figure 6.3.

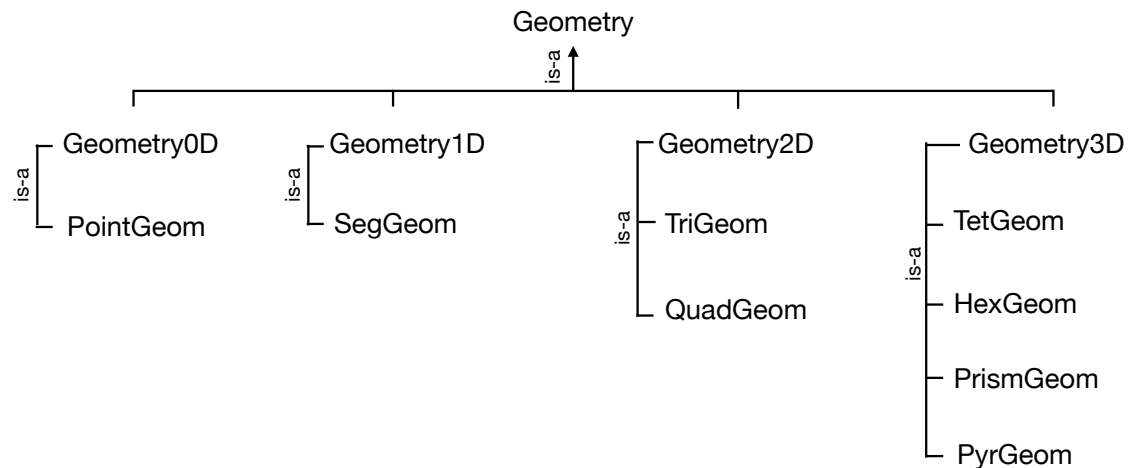


Figure 6.3 Class hierarchy derived from `Geometry`, the base class of the `SpatialDomains` Directory.

At its core, the items contained within `SpatialDomains` are meant to represent the mapping of `StdRegion` information into world-space. The various attributes contained herein related to this geometric (mesh, curvature and mapping) information. The various

private, protected and public data members contained within StdRegions are provided in the subsequent sections.

6.2.1 Variables at the Level of Geometry

Private:

Protected:

Public:

6.2.2 Variables at the Level of Geometry\$D for various Dimensions

Private:

Protected:

Public:

6.2.3 Variables at the Level of Shape-Specific Geometry Information

Private:

Protected:

Public:

6.2.4 Reference to World-Space Mapping

Geometry

GeomFactors

6.2.5 MeshGraph and MeshGraphIO

The **MeshGraph** class holds the geometric information about each element and the connectivity of these elements to form the domain. The ownership of a **Geometry** object is now usually held by a **MeshGraph** in one of its unique pointer maps indexed by **globalID**. The **MeshGraphIO** classes handle **MeshGraph**'s reading and writing operations in the different file formats.

Since v5.7.0 (when **MeshGraph**'s input/output operations were moved to the separate **MeshGraphIO** classes) a **MeshGraph** is instantiated by calling a **MeshGraphIO** subclass' **Read** method. Creating a **MeshGraph** object generates the hierarchical mesh entity data structures, constructing the domain Ω by instantiating a corresponding **Geometry** object for each element Ω_e .

6.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within SpatialDomains

As stated in the introduction, this section of this guide is structured in question-answer form. This is not meant to capture every possible question asked of us on the *Nektar++* users list; however, this set of (ever-growing) questions are meant to capture the “big ideas” that developers want to know about how SpatialDomains work and how they can be used.

In this section, we will through question and answer format try to cover the following basic algorithmic concepts that are found within the SpatialDomains part of the library:

- xx

With the big ideas in place, let us now start into our questions.

Question:

Inside the Library: LocalRegions

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the LocalRegions Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use the book by Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] as our principle reference. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the LocalRegions Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

7.1 The Fundamentals Behind LocalRegions

The idea behind local regions is strongly connected to that of standard regions, but from the top-down perspective. As an example: in standard regions, we only had to consider one type of triangle, the one that is straight-sided, right-angled, and whose principle horizontal and vertical sides were aligned with the coordinate axes. Of course, meshes of elements consist of elements that may or may not be right-angled, planar-sided, etc. The starting point for us is the question of how to build basis functions that exist of a *world-space* element – that is, an element whose vertex positions lie in the engineering (PDE) coordinate system of interest. Such an expansion is a local region. In *Nektar++*, each local region *is-a* standard region and *has-a* spatial domain data structure. The local region inherits common expansion methods from its standard region parent, and it uses its spatial domain information to specialize its operators to its local coordinate system.

7.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within LocalRegions

As mentioned earlier, in almost all object-oriented languages (which includes C++), there exists the concepts of *class attributes* and *object attributes*. For a summary of attributes and access patterns, please review Section 5.2. Within the LocalRegions directory of the library, there exists a class inheritance hierarchy designed to try to encourage re-use of core algorithms (while simultaneously trying to minimize duplication of code). We present this class hierarchy in Figure 7.1.

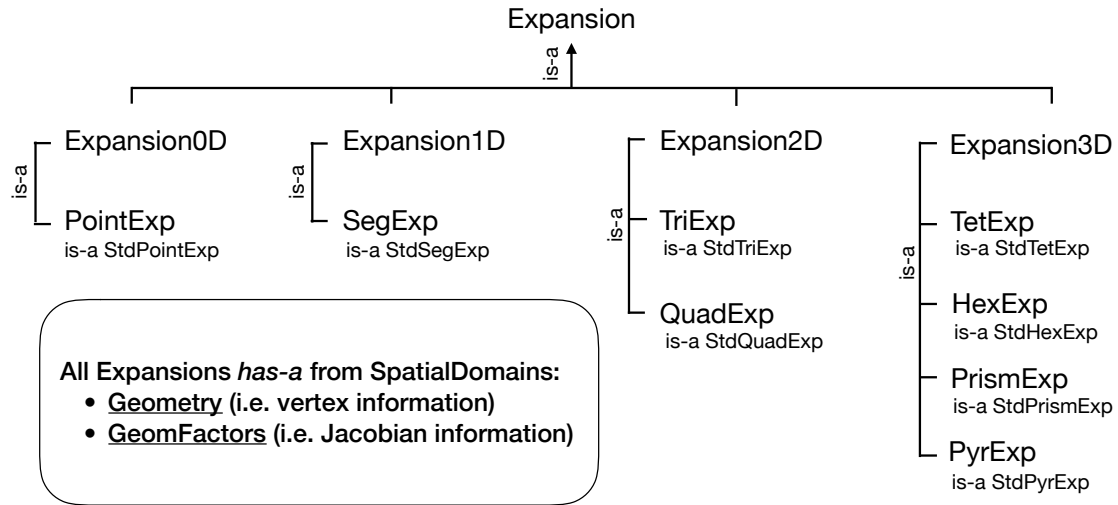


Figure 7.1 Class hierarchy derived from Expansion, the base class of the LocalRegions Directory.

As is seen in Figure ??, the LocalRegions hierarchy consists of three levels: the base level from which all LocalRegion objects are derived is Expansion. This object is then specialized by dimension, yielding Expansion0D, Expansion1D, Expansion2D and Expansion3D. The dimension-specific objects are then specialized based upon shape.

The object attributes (variables) at various levels of the hierarchy can be understood in light of Figure 5.6. At its core, an expansion is a means of representing a function over a world-space region evaluated at a collection of point positions. The various data members hold information to allow all these basic building blocks to be specified. Many of the attributes are inherited from StdRegions as they are not unique to LocalRegions; however, each LocalRegion Expansion is uniquely defined based upon its geometric factors (which it stores via SpatialDomain information).

The various private, protected and public data members contained within LocalRegions are provided in the subsequent sections.

7.2.1 Variables at the Level of Expansion

Private: There are private methods but no private data members within Expansion.

Protected: As discussed above, the primary data in LocalRegions that distinguishes it from StdExpansions is the *has-a* relationship with SpatialDomains, given by the following:

- SpatialDomains::Geometry* m_geom
- SpatialDomains::GeomFactorsUniquePtr m_geomFactors
- MetricMap m_metrics

Local Segment Expansion

$$u_e^\delta(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{j=0}^N \hat{u}_j^e \phi_j^e(\chi_e^{-1}(\mathbf{x}))$$

Figure 7.2 Diagram to help understand the various data members (object attributes) contained within LocalRegions and how they connect with the mathematical representation presented earlier. Recall that a LocalRegion *is-a* StdRegion and *has-a* SpatialDomain.

Public: There are public methods but no public data members within Expansion.

7.2.2 Variables at the Level of Expansion\$D for various Dimensions

Private:

Protected:

Public:

7.2.3 Variables at the Level of Shape-Specific Expansions

Private:

Protected:

Public:

7.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within LocalRegions

As stated in the introduction, this section of this guide is structured in question-answer form. This is not meant to capture every possible question asked of us on the *Nektar++* users list; however, this set of (ever-growing) questions are meant to capture the “big ideas” that developers want to know about how LocalRegions work and how they can be used.

In this section, we will through question and answer format try to cover the following basic algorithmic concepts that are found within the LocalRegions part of the library:

7.3.1 Mapping trace data from an element face

When handling discontinuous Galerkin (DG) expansions and techniques such as Gradient Jump Penalisation we need to be able to take data from the trace of the element (i.e. edges in 2D elements and faces in 3D element) to a unique trace which is shaped between two elements. This is necessary for example to perform a Riemann problem to link two elements in DG field. Such an action might require interpolation from one distribution of quadrature points to another however the shared trace space may not be aligned trivially with the element trace.

In two-dimensions we only have edges which are either aligned so that the local coordinate system runs in the same direction, noted by the enum `StdRegions::eForwards` in the code, or in reverse direction, noted by the enum `StdRegions::eBackwards` in the code.

In three-dimensions the mappings get more complicated particularly for quadrilateral faces. For triangular faces, our use of the collapsed coordinate system means that triangular faces can only align in a forwards or backwards sense because the singular vertices must align and so this is managed in the mesh generation stage. For a triangular faces we use the enum `StdRegions::eDir1FwdDir1_Dir2FwdDir2` to denote a forwards aligned face and the enum `StdRegions::eDir1BwdDir1_Dir2FwdDir2` to denote a face where the bottom x -coordinate runs in the reverse of backwards direction on the element trace compared to the shared trace.

At this point the meaning of the face enums needs a bit more explanation. For any two-dimensional trace we have two coordinates which are denoted by “Dir1” (Direction 1, i.e. x -direction) and “Dir 2” (Direction 2, i.e. y -direction). So the num `StdRegions::eDir1FwdDir1_Dir2FwdDir2` denotes that direction 1 of the original triangle (or quadrilateral) is aligned to direction 1 of the shared/mapped triangle (or quadrilateral) and the two direction are aligned (i.e. Forwards). It also denotes that direction 2 of the original triangle (or quadrilateral) is aligned to direction 2 of the shared/mapped triangle (or quadrilateral). The enum `StdRegions::eDir1BwdDir1_Dir2FwdDir2` is similarly interpreted but Direction 1 of the original face is now aligned to be in the reverse direction to Direction 1 of the shared/mapped face.

For quadrilateral faces there are eight possible permutations that one quadrilateral can be oriented to another quadrilateral and these include

- `StdRegions::eDir1FwdDir1_Dir2FwdDir2`
- `StdRegions::eDir1FwdDir1_Dir2BwdDir2`
- `StdRegions::eDir1BwdDir1_Dir2FwdDir2`
- `StdRegions::eDir1BwdDir1_Dir2BwdDir2`

- `StdRegions::eDir1FwdDir2_Dir2FwdDir1`
- `StdRegions::eDir1FwdDir2_Dir2BwdDir1`
- `StdRegions::eDir1BwdDir2_Dir2FwdDir1`
- `StdRegions::eDir1BwdDir2_Dir2BwdDir1`

When coding we typically want to match the coefficients or physical quadrature points from one face to another and so there are methods to produce the mapping arrays to achieve this. For quadrature points we have `Expansion3D::ReOrientTracePhysMaps()`. In most cases there is a symmetry as to whether you map from the element trace to the shared trace or vice versa but for the two cases `StdRegions::eDir1FwdDir2_Dir2BwdDir1` `StdRegions::eDir1BwdDir2_Dir2FwdDir1` where the faces are transposed and one direction is reversed care must be taken since the mappings are not symmetric. The method `Expansion3D::ReOrientTracePhysMaps()` is defined by default to provide a mapping which takes the local trace to the global trace such that $sharedtrace[i] = localtrace[map[i]]$. However it is possible to provide a false boolean to the argument `Forwards` and it will return the mapping from the shared trace to the local trace so that $localtrace[i] = sharedtrace[map[i]]$.

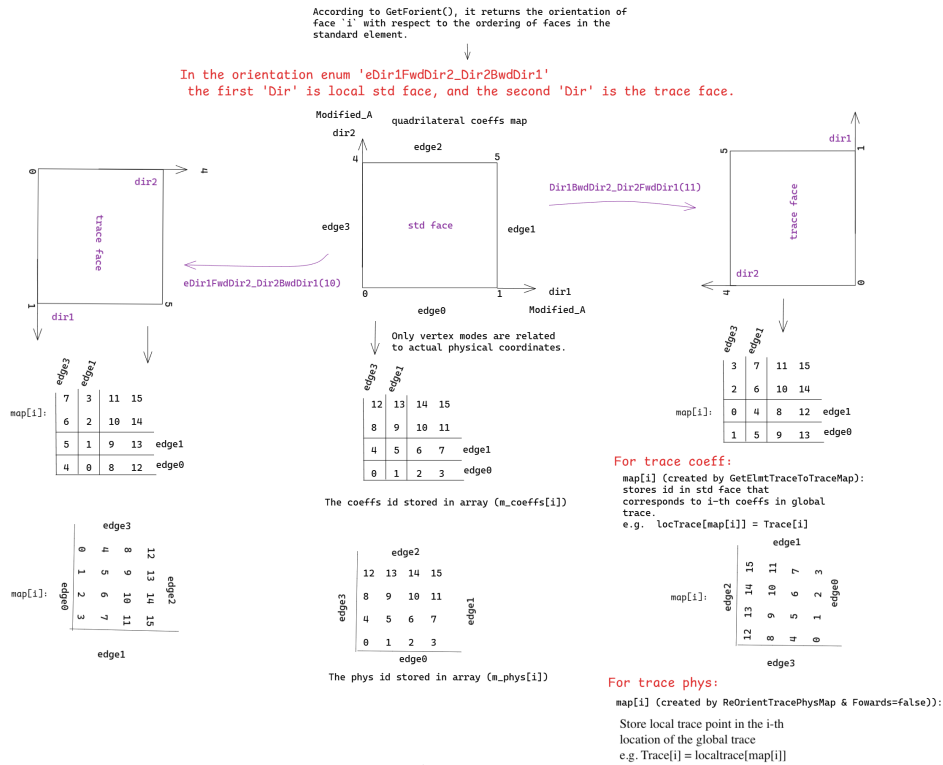


Figure 7.3 Example of trace mappings for complex transposed cases `eDir1FwdDir2_Dir2BwdDir1` and `eDir1BwdDir2_Dir2FwdDir1`.

Figure 7.3 provides an example of this more complex mapping case for the reordering of the face coefficients and also highlights the changes in the face orientation.

7.3.2 Questions and Answers

With the big ideas in place, let us now start into our questions.

Question:

Inside the Library: Collections

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the Collections Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use the book by Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] as our principle reference. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the Collections Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

8.1 The Fundamentals Behind Collections

The concept of “collections” is that there are many operations that we (conceptually) accomplish on an element-by-element basis that can be aggregated together into a single operation. The basic idea is that whenever you see a piece of code that consists of a loop in which, in the body of the loop, you are accomplishing the same operation (e.g. function evaluation) based upon an input variable tied to the loop index – you may be able to make the operation a “collection”. For instance, consider if you were given the following snippet of code in Matlab notation:

```
do j = 1:N,  
    y(j) = dot(a,x(:,j))  
end
```

where y is a row vector of length N , x is an $M \times N$ matrix and a is a row vector of length M . Note that in this code snippet, the vector a remains constant; only the vector x involved in the dot product is changing based upon the index (i.e. selecting a column of the array). From linear algebra, you might recognize this as the way we accomplish the product of a row vector with a matrix – we march through the matrix accomplishing dot products. Although these two things are equivalent mathematically, they are not equivalent computationally *from the perspective of computational efficiency*. Most linear algebra operations within *Nektar++* are done using BLAS – Basic Linear

Algebra Subroutines – a collection of specialized routines for accomplishing Level 1 (single loop), Level 2 (double nested loop) and Level 3 (triple nested loop) operations. A dot product is an example of a Level 1 BLAS operation; A matrix-vector multiplication is an example of a Level 2 BLAS operation; and finally a matrix-matrix multiplication is an example of a Level 3 BLAS operation. The general rule of thumb is that as you move up the levels, the operations can be made more efficient (using various algorithmic reorganization and memory layout strategies). Hence when you see a loop over Level 1 BLAS calls (like in the above piece of code), you should always ask yourself if this could be transformed into a Level 2 BLAS call. Since the vector a is not changing, this piece of code should be replaced with an appropriate vector-matrix multiply.

As seen in `StdRegions` and `LocalRegions`, we often conceptually think of many of our basic building block operations as being elemental. We have elemental basis matrices, local stiffness matrices, etc. Although it is correct to implement operations as an iterator over elements in which you accomplish an action like evaluation (done by taking a basis evaluation matrix times a coefficient vector), this operation can be made more efficient by ganging all these elemental operations together into a *collection*.

As mentioned earlier, one of the caveats of this approach is that you must assume some level of consistency of the operation. For instance, in the case of physical evaluations, you must assume that a collection consists of elements that are all of the same time, have the same basis number and ordering, and are evaluated at the same set of points – otherwise the operation cannot be expressed as a single (basis) matrix multiplied by a matrix whose columns consist of the modes of all the elements who have joined the collective operation.

As will be seen in the data structure and algorithms sections of this discussion, these assumptions lead us to two fundamental types of collections: collections that live at the `StdRegions` level (i.e. collection operations that act on a group of elements as represented in reference space) and collections that live at the `LocalRegions` level (i.e. collection operations that act on a group of elements as represented in world space).

8.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within Collections

8.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within Collections

As stated in the introduction, this section of this guide is structured in question-answer form. This is not meant to capture every possible question asked of us on the *Nektar++* users list; however, this set of (ever-growing) questions are meant to capture the “big ideas” that developers want to know about how Collections work and how they can be used.

In this section, we will through question and answer format try to cover the following basic algorithmic concepts that are found within the Collections part of the library:

- xx

With the big ideas in place, let us now start into our questions.

Question:

Inside the Library: MultiRegions

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the MultiRegions Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use the book by Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] as our principle reference. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the MultiRegions Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

9.1 The Fundamentals Behind MultiRegions

Up to now in the library, the various data structures and methods associated with standard regions, spatial domains and local regions are not specifically dictated by any particular numerical method. In fact, at this stage, they can all be viewed in light of approximation theory. With local regions in place, we have a region in world space over which we can represent an expansion (i.e. linear combination of basis functions) and form its derivatives and its integral. It is at the level of MultiRegions that we now combine two fundamental concepts: the idea of a collection of elements together to form a “global” expansion and the idea of how these (local) elements communicate (in the sense of how does one form approximations of a PDE of these collections of elements). Hence MultiRegions is important because it gives us a way of dealing with general tessellation and also because it is the first place at which we can connect to a specific numerical PDE approximation methods of choice (i.e. continuous Galerkin FEM methods, discontinuous Galerkin finite volume methods, etc.).

Because MultiRegions is both about grouping of elements in space (to form a domain) and about solving PDEs over these domains, you will find two primary collections of routines contained within the MultiRegions directory. You will find things related to collections of elements: ExpList (Expansion List), DisContField (discontinuous field) and ConField (continuous field); and you will find objects related to the linear systems formed based upon the particular numerical method once selects (i.e. GlobalLinSys,

which stands for Global Linear System).

At present, the *Nektar++* framework supports three types of numerical PDE discretizations for conservation laws:

- **Discontinuous Galerkin Methods:** These weak-form (variational) methods do not require element continuity, but do put restrictions on the flux of information between elements. In general, these methods can be thought of as being in the class of finite volume (FV) methods. One feature of these methods that is often exploited computationally is that many operations can be considered as elemental. See [17, 38] and references therein for a more complete summary.
- **Continuous Galerkin Methods:** These weak-form (variational) methods require at least C^0 continuity. Mathematically, there have been extensions to higher levels of continuity, e.g. Isogeometric Analysis [18], these are not implemented in *Nektar++* and would require further constraints on our `SpatialDomain` representations than we currently accommodate. In general, these methods can be thought of as being in the class of finite element methods (FEM). Although these methods are technically (mathematically) formulated as global methods, their elemental construction and compact basis types allow for many local operations. Many (but not all) of the linear system routines that are contained within the MultiRegions directory are focussed on this discretization type. See [59, 22, 44] and references therein for a more complete summary.
- **Flux Reconstruction Methods:** These strong-form methods do not require element continuity, but like dG methods they impose restrictions on the flux of information between elements. In general, these methods can be thought of as being in the class of generalized finite difference (FD) or collocating methods. See [48, 70] and references therein for a more complete summary.

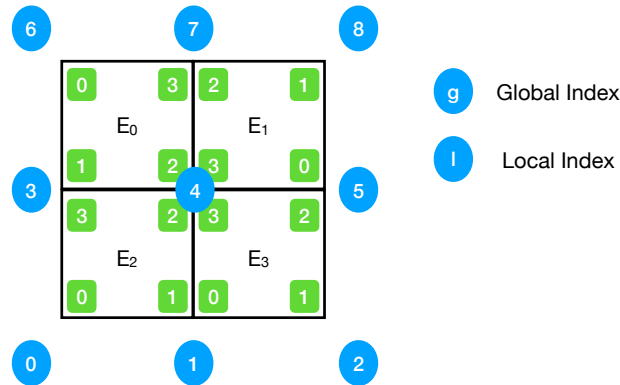


Figure 9.1 Diagram to help explain assembly. UPDATE.

Assembly Map

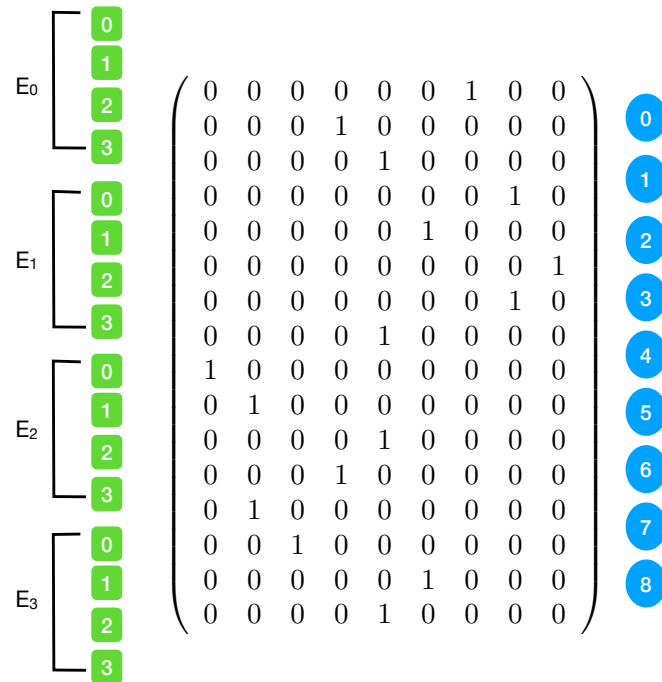


Figure 9.2 Diagram to help explain assembly. UPDATE.

9.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within MultiRegions

As mentioned earlier, in almost all object-oriented languages (which includes $C++$), there exists the concepts of *class attributes* and *object attributes*. For a summary of attributes and access patterns, please review Section 5.2. Within the MultiRegions directory of the library, there exists a class inheritance hierarchy designed to try to encourage re-use of core algorithms (while simultaneously trying to minimize duplication of code). We present this class hierarchy in Figure 9.3.

At its core, the items contained within MultiRegions are meant to represent sets of LocalRegions. In the most abstract sense, an ExpList is merely a set of LocalRegion objects that may or may not have any relevance to each other. We then, as we do in other parts of the library, specialize on the dimension of the objects these sets will contain. At the subsequent levels of the hierarchy, we now involve information about we want to treat a collection of elements when evaluating them as a *field*. We consider a *field* to be the representation of a function over a (sub-)domain. A domain consists of a collection of elements that are *connected* (that is, they form a contiguous region in space). We think of the region of space as being tiled by elements over which expansions are build. If we consider a MultiRegion field to be a collection of these expansions with no constraints on their continuity, we arrive at the DisContField family of class definitions (which vary by dimension). For the currently available solvers within *Nektar++*, this level of field is used for the solution of PDEs via the discontinuous Galerkin (dG) method. If we consider a

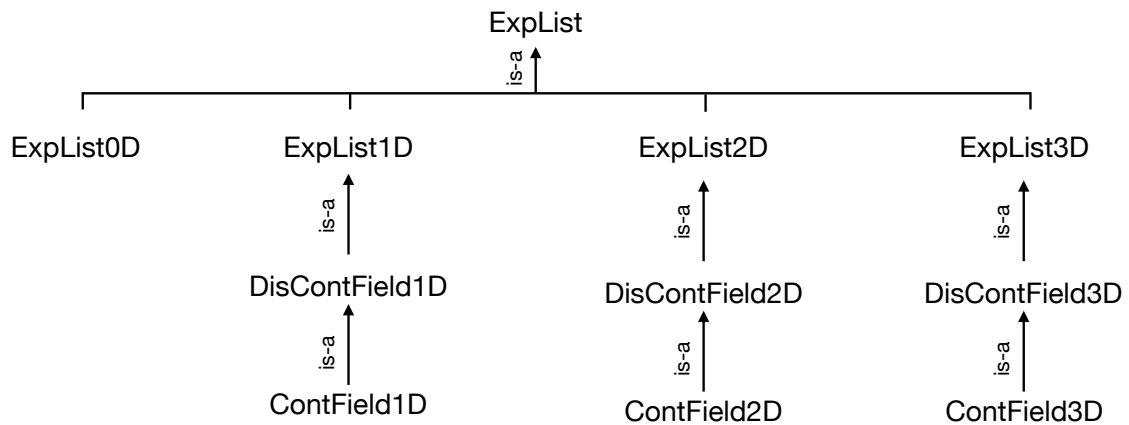


Figure 9.3 Class hierarchy derived from `ExpList`, the base class of the MultiRegions Directory.

function as a collection of expansion in which we require continuity (in *Nektar++*, only C^0 continuity), then we employ a further derived class called `ContField` (which again varies by dimension). For the currently available solvers within *Nektar++*, this level of field is used for the solution of PDEs via the continuous Galerkin (cG) method. Since many of the operations at the continuous field level do not rely upon the continuity of the field, we have structured the continuous MultiRegion object as with an *is-a* relationship with the `DisContFields`.

The various private, protected and public data members contained within MultiRegions are provided in the subsequent sections.

9.2.1 Variables at the Level of `ExpList`

Private:

Protected:

Public:

9.2.2 Variables at the Level of `ExpList$D` for various Dimensions

Private:

Protected:

Public:

9.2.3 Variables at the Level of Discontinuous Field Expansions

Private:

Protected:

Public:

9.2.4 Variables at the Level of Continuous Field Expansions

Private:

Protected:

9.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within MultiRegions

As stated in the introduction, this section of this guide is structured in question-answer form. This is not meant to capture every possible question asked of us on the *Nektar++* users list; however, this set of (ever-growing) questions are meant to capture the “big ideas” that developers want to know about how MultiRegions work and how they can be used.

In this section, we will through question and answer format try to cover the following basic algorithmic concepts that are found within the MultiRegions part of the library:

- xx

With the big ideas in place, let us now start into our questions.

Question:

9.4 Preconditioners

Most of the solvers in *Nektar++*, including the incompressible Navier-Stokes equations, rely on the solution of a Helmholtz equation,

$$\nabla^2 u(\mathbf{x}) + \lambda u(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x}), \quad (9.1)$$

an elliptic boundary value problem, at every time-step, where u is defined on a domain Ω of N_{el} non-overlapping elements. In this section, we outline the preconditioners which are implemented in *Nektar++*. Whilst some of the preconditioners are generic, many are especially designed for the *modified* basis only.

9.4.1 Mathematical formulation

The standard spectral/*hp* approach to discretise (9.1) starts with an expansion in terms of the elemental modes:

$$u^\delta(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{n=0}^{N_{\text{dof}}-1} \hat{u}_n \Phi_n(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{e=1}^{N_{\text{el}}} \sum_{n=0}^{N_m^e-1} \hat{u}_n^e \phi_n^e(\mathbf{x}) \quad (9.2)$$

where N_{el} is the number of elements, N_m^e is the number of local expansion modes within the element Ω^e , $\phi_n^e(\mathbf{x})$ is the n^{th} local expansion mode within the element Ω^e , $\hat{u}_n^e$ is the n^{th} local expansion coefficient within the element Ω^e . Approximating our solution by (9.2), we adopt a Galerkin discretisation of equation (9.1) where for an appropriate test space V^δ we find an approximate solution $\mathbf{u}^\delta \in V^\delta$ such that

$$\mathcal{L}(v, u) = \int_{\Omega} \nabla v^\delta \cdot \nabla u^\delta + \lambda v^\delta u^\delta d\mathbf{x} = \int_{\Omega} v^\delta f d\mathbf{x} \quad \forall v^\delta \in V^\delta$$

This can be formulated in matrix terms as

$$\mathbf{H}\hat{\mathbf{u}} = \mathbf{f}$$

where $\mathbf{H}$ represents the Helmholtz matrix, $\hat{\mathbf{u}}$ are the unknown global coefficients and $\mathbf{f}$ the inner product the expansion basis with the forcing function.

C^0 formulation

We first consider the C^0 (i.e. continuous Galerkin) formulation. The spectral/*hp* expansion basis is obtained by considering interior modes, which have support in the interior of the element, separately from boundary modes which are non-zero on the boundary of the element. We align the boundary modes across the interface of the elements to obtain a continuous global solution. The boundary modes can be further decomposed into vertex, edge and face modes, defined as follows:

- vertex modes have support on a single vertex and the three adjacent edges and faces as well as the interior of the element;
- edge modes have support on a single edge and two adjacent faces as well as the interior of the element;
- face modes have support on a single face and the interior of the element.

When the discretisation is continuous, this strong coupling between vertices, edges and faces leads to a matrix of high condition number κ . Our aim is to reduce this condition number by applying specialised preconditioners. Utilising the above mentioned decomposition, we can write the matrix equation as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{H}_{bb} & \mathbf{H}_{bi} \\ \mathbf{H}_{ib} & \mathbf{H}_{ii} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{u}}_b \\ \hat{\mathbf{u}}_i \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{f}}_b \\ \hat{\mathbf{f}}_i \end{bmatrix}$$

where the subscripts b and i denote the boundary and interior degrees of freedom respectively. This system then can be statically condensed allowing us to solve for the boundary and interior degrees of freedom in a decoupled manor. The statically condensed matrix is given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{H}_{bb} - \mathbf{H}_{bi}\mathbf{H}_{ii}^{-1}\mathbf{H}_{ib} & 0 \\ \mathbf{H}_{ib} & \mathbf{H}_{ii} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{u}}_b \\ \hat{\mathbf{u}}_i \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{f}}_b - \mathbf{H}_{bi}\mathbf{H}_{ii}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{f}}_i \\ \hat{\mathbf{f}}_i \end{bmatrix}$$

This is highly advantageous since by definition of our interior expansion this vanishes on the boundary, and so $\mathbf{H}_{ii}$ is block diagonal and thus can be easily inverted. The above sub-structuring has reduced our problem to solving the boundary problem:

$$\mathbf{S}_1 \hat{\mathbf{u}} = \hat{\mathbf{f}}_1$$

where $\mathbf{S}_1 = \mathbf{H}_{bb} - \mathbf{H}_{bi}\mathbf{H}_{ii}^{-1}\mathbf{H}_{ib}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{f}}_1 = \hat{\mathbf{f}}_b - \mathbf{H}_{bi}\mathbf{H}_{ii}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{f}}_i$. Although this new system typically has better convergence properties (i.e lower κ), the system is still ill-conditioned, leading to a convergence rate of the conjugate gradient (CG) routine that is prohibitively slow. For this reason we need to precondition $\mathbf{S}_1$. To do this we solve an equivalent system of the form:

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} (\mathbf{S}_1 \hat{\mathbf{u}} - \hat{\mathbf{f}}_1) = 0$$

where the preconditioning matrix $\mathbf{M}$ is such that $\kappa(\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{S}_1)$ is less than $\kappa(\mathbf{S}_1)$ and speeds up the convergence rate. Within the conjugate gradient routine the same preconditioner $\mathbf{M}$ is applied to the residual vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{k+1}$ of the CG routine every iteration:

$$\hat{\mathbf{z}}_{k+1} = \mathbf{M}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{k+1}.$$

HDG formulation

When utilising a hybridizable discontinuous Galerkin formulation, we perform a static condensation approach but in a discontinuous framework, which for brevity we omit here. However, we still obtain a matrix equation of the form

$$\mathbf{\Lambda} \hat{\mathbf{u}} = \hat{\mathbf{f}}.$$

where $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents an operator which projects the solution of each face back onto the three-dimensional element or edge onto the two-dimensional element. In this setting then, $\hat{\mathbf{f}}$ consists of degrees of freedom for each egde (in 2D) or face (in 3D). The overall system does not, therefore, results in a weaker coupling between degrees of freedom, but at the expense of a larger matrix system.

9.4.2 Preconditioners

Within the *Nektar++* framework a number of preconditioners are available to speed up the convergence rate of the conjugate gradient routine. The table below summarises each method, the dimensions of elements which are supported, and also the discretisation type support which can either be continuous (CG) or discontinuous (hybridizable DG).

Name	Dimensions	Discretisations
Null	All	All
Diagonal	All	All
FullLinearSpace	2/3D	CG
LowEnergyBlock	3D	CG
Block	2/3D	All
LOR	2/3D	CG
FullLinearSpaceWithDiagonal	All	CG
FullLinearSpaceWithLowEnergyBlock	2/3D	CG
FullLinearSpaceWithBlock	2/3D	CG

The default is the `Diagonal` preconditioner. The above preconditioners are specified through the `Preconditioner` option of the `SOLVERINFO` section in the session file. For example, to enable `FullLinearSpace` one can use:

```
1 <| PROPERTY="Preconditioner" VALUE="FullLinearSpace" />
```

Alternatively one can have more control over different preconditioners for each solution field by using the `GlobalSysSoln` section. For more details, consult the user guide. The following sections specify the details for each method.

Diagonal

Diagonal (or Jacobi) preconditioning is amongst the simplest preconditioning strategies. In this scheme one takes the global matrix $\mathbf{H} = (h_{ij})$ and computes the diagonal terms h_{ii} . The preconditioner is then formed as a diagonal matrix $\mathbf{M}^{-1} = (h_{ii}^{-1})$.

Linear space

The linear space (or coarse space) of the matrix system is that containing degrees of freedom corresponding only to the vertex modes in the high-order system. Preconditioning of this space is achieved by forming the matrix corresponding to the coarse space and inverting it, so that

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} = (\mathbf{S}_1^{-1})_{vv}$$

Since the mesh associated with higher order methods is relatively coarse compared with traditional finite element discretisations, the linear space can usually be directly inverted without memory issues. However such a methodology can be prohibitive on large parallel systems, due to a bottleneck in communication.

In *Nektar++* the inversion of the linear space present is handled using the XX^T library. XX^T is a parallel direct solver for problems of the form $\mathbf{A}\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \hat{\mathbf{b}}$ based around a sparse factorisation of the inverse of $\mathbf{A}$. To precondition utilising this methodology the linear

sub-space is gathered from the expansion and the preconditioned residual within the CG routine is determined by solving

$$(\mathbf{S}_1)_{vv} \hat{\mathbf{z}} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}$$

The preconditioned residual $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ is then scattered back to the respective location in the global degrees of freedom.

Block

Block preconditioning of the C^0 continuous system is defined by the following:

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{S}_1^{-1})_{vv} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (\mathbf{S}_1^{-1})_{eb} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (\mathbf{S}_1^{-1})_{ef} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $\text{diag}[(\mathbf{S}_1)_{vv}]$ is the diagonal of the vertex modes, $(\mathbf{S}_1)_{eb}$ and $(\mathbf{S}_1)_{fb}$ are block diagonal matrices corresponding to coupling of an edge (or face) with itself i.e ignoring the coupling to other edges and faces. This preconditioner is best suited for two dimensional problems.

In the HDG system, we take the block corresponding to each face and invert it. Each of these inverse blocks then forms one of the diagonal components of the block matrix $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$.

Applied to the full matrix system $\mathbf{H}$, the preconditioner additionally includes the inverse of the interior modes $\mathbf{H}_{ii}$ and is defined by:

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{bb}})^{-1}_{vv} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (\mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{bb}})^{-1}_{eb} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (\mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{bb}})^{-1}_{fb} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & (\mathbf{H}_{ii})^{-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

9.4.3 Low energy

Low energy basis preconditioning follows the methodology proposed by Sherwin & Casarin. In this method a new basis is numerically constructed from the original basis which allows the Schur complement matrix to be preconditioned using a block preconditioner. The method is outlined briefly in the following.

Elementally the local approximation $\mathbf{u}^\delta$ can be expressed as different expansions lying in the same discrete space V^δ

$$\mathbf{u}^\delta(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_i^{\dim(V^\delta)} \hat{u}_{1i} \phi_{1i}(x) = \sum_i^{\dim(V^\delta)} \hat{u}_{2i} \phi_{2i}(x)$$

Since both expansions lie in the same space it's possible to express one basis in terms of the other via a transformation, i.e.

$$\phi_2 = \mathbf{C} \phi_1 \implies \hat{\mathbf{u}}_1 = \mathbf{C}^T \hat{\mathbf{u}}_2$$

Applying this to the Helmholtz operator it is possible to show that,

$$\mathbf{H}_2 = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{H}_1\mathbf{C}^T$$

For sub-structured matrices ($\mathbf{S}$) the transformation matrix ($\mathbf{C}$) becomes:

$$\mathbf{C} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathbf{I} \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence the transformation in terms of the Schur complement matrices is:

$$\mathbf{S}_2 = \mathbf{R}\mathbf{S}_1\mathbf{R}^T$$

Typically the choice of expansion basis ϕ_1 can lead to a Helmholtz matrix that has undesirable properties i.e poor condition number. By choosing a suitable transformation matrix $\mathbf{C}$ it is possible to construct a new basis, numerically, that is amenable to block diagonal preconditioning.

$$\mathbf{S}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{vv} & \mathbf{S}_{ve} & \mathbf{S}_{vf} \\ \mathbf{S}_{ve}^T & \mathbf{S}_{ee} & \mathbf{S}_{ef} \\ \mathbf{S}_{vf}^T & \mathbf{S}_{ef}^T & \mathbf{S}_{ff} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{vv} & \mathbf{S}_{v,ef} \\ \mathbf{S}_{v,ef}^T & \mathbf{S}_{ef,ef} \end{bmatrix}$$

Applying the transformation $\mathbf{S}_2 = \mathbf{R}\mathbf{S}_1\mathbf{R}^T$ leads to the following matrix

$$\mathbf{S}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{vv} + \mathbf{R}_v\mathbf{S}_{v,ef}^T + \mathbf{S}_{v,ef}\mathbf{R}_v^T + \mathbf{R}_v\mathbf{S}_{ef,ef}\mathbf{R}_v^T & [\mathbf{S}_{v,ef} + \mathbf{R}_v\mathbf{S}_{ef,ef}]\mathbf{A}^T \\ \mathbf{A}[\mathbf{S}_{v,ef}^T + \mathbf{S}_{ef,ef}\mathbf{R}_v^T] & \mathbf{A}\mathbf{S}_{ef,ef}\mathbf{A}^T \end{bmatrix}$$

where $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{S}_{ef,ef}\mathbf{A}^T$ is given by

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{S}_{ef,ef}\mathbf{A}^T = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{ee} + \mathbf{R}_{ef}\mathbf{S}_{ef}^T + \mathbf{S}_{ef}\mathbf{R}_{ef}^T + \mathbf{R}_{ef}\mathbf{S}_{ff}\mathbf{R}_{ef}^T & \mathbf{S}_{ef} + \mathbf{R}_{ef}\mathbf{S}_{ff} \\ \mathbf{S}_{ef}^T + \mathbf{S}_{ff}\mathbf{R}_{ef}^T & \mathbf{S}_{ff} \end{bmatrix}$$

To orthogonalise the vertex-edge and vertex-face modes, it can be seen from the above that

$$\mathbf{R}_{ef}^T = -\mathbf{S}_{ff}^{-1}\mathbf{S}_{ef}^T$$

and for the edge-face modes:

$$\mathbf{R}_v^T = -\mathbf{S}_{ef,ef}^{-1}\mathbf{S}_{v,ef}^T$$

Here it is important to consider the form of the expansion basis since the presence of $\mathbf{S}_{ff}^{-1}$ will lead to a new basis which has support on all other faces; this is problematic when creating a C^0 continuous global basis. To circumvent this problem when forming the new basis, the decoupling is only performed between a specific edge and the two adjacent faces in a symmetric standard region. Since the decoupling is performed in a rotationally symmetric standard region the basis does not take into account the Jacobian mapping between the local element and global coordinates, hence the final expansion will not be completely orthogonal.

The low energy basis creates a Schur complement matrix that although it is not completely orthogonal can be spectrally approximated by its block diagonal contribution. The final form of the preconditioner is:

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \text{diag}[(\mathbf{S}_2)_{vv}] & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (\mathbf{S}_2)_{eb} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (\mathbf{S}_2)_{fb} \end{bmatrix}^{-1}$$

where $\text{diag}[(\mathbf{S}_2)_{vv}]$ is the diagonal of the vertex modes, $(\mathbf{S}_2)_{eb}$ and $(\mathbf{S}_2)_{fb}$ are block diagonal matrices corresponding to coupling of an edge (or face) with itself i.e ignoring the coupling to other edges and faces.

9.4.4 Lower-order Refined (LOR) preconditioner

For the construction of the LOR preconditioner, the global matrix $\mathbf{H}$ is interpolated from the higher-order spectral/ hp discretisation to its corresponding low-order ($P=1$) “refined” finite element discretisation $\mathbf{H}_L$. The conceptual representation of this conversion is seen in Fig. 9.4, where the LOR mesh on the right is a sub-structured grid of collocated Gauss-Lobatto-Legendre (GLL) nodal points. The application of the preconditioning matrix $\mathbf{M}$ is then formulated as $\mathbf{M}^{-1} = \mathbf{H}_L^{-1}$.

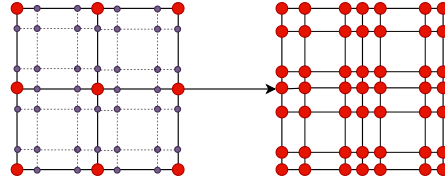


Figure 9.4 Representation of converting a higher-order finite element grid at $P=3$ to its lower-order $P=1$ equivalent for the LOR preconditioner. The red dots represent the points on the linear mesh, and the purple dots represent the quadrature points within a linear element. The resulting LOR mesh only contains linear DOF. The spacing of the linear DOF for the LOR mesh here is done in a GLL manner, the same as that of the higher-order element.

For the high-order discretisation $\mathbf{H}$, every internal DOF is coupled with every other DOF in an element. The conversion to the LOR space $\mathbf{H}_L$ increases the sparsity as now the DOF are only connected to their immediate neighbours. The difference in connectivity between the two discretisations is further accentuated in mathematical operators, even if the number of DOF is the same (as seen in Fig. 9.4). Thus, the operators on the lower-order discretisation are cheaper to evaluate than their higher-order counterparts.

The generalised Vandemonde matrix $\mathcal{V}$ from Eqn. (9.3) is used for the interpolation of the higher-order polynomial space to the collocated Lagrange basis in the LOR space. In matrix terms, this interpolation is expressed as,

$$\mathcal{V}\hat{\mathbf{f}} = \mathbf{f} \quad (9.3)$$

where, $\mathbf{f}[i] = f(\xi_i)$ is the known polynomial expansion, $\mathcal{V}[i][j] = \phi_j(\xi_i)$ where ϕ_j is the chosen basis function and $\hat{\mathbf{f}}[j] = \hat{f}(\xi_j)$ are the unknown expansion coefficients. The

unknown Lagrange polynomials are then found using $\hat{\mathbf{f}} = \mathcal{V}^{-1}\mathbf{f}$. The interpolation basis works for any basis selection in the HO space, where the matrix $\mathcal{V}$ is appropriately constructed according to the choice of higher-order expansion basis [?]. The interpolation for the case of the nodal expansion corresponds to a collocation projection. In contrast, a modal expansion basis is more involved as the construction of $\mathcal{V}$ has to handle the change of basis. The interpolation step is applied to both the trial and test functions in the higher-order polynomial space, and the interpolated functions are then used to construct $\mathbf{H}_L$.

Fig. 9.5 gives an overview of the Nektar++ LOR preconditioner algorithm.

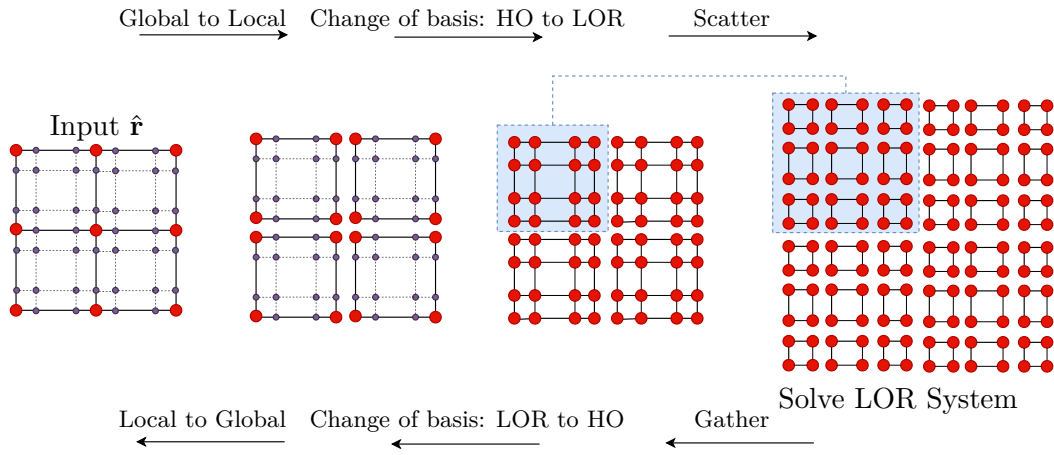


Figure 9.5 Representation of the current algorithm for the LOR preconditioner. There are three major steps: a. The conversion to the LOR mesh (left to right), b. solving the LOR linear system and c. projecting the solution back to the HO mesh (right to left). This process takes place at every preconditioned iteration.

The following steps are done for the preconditioning:

- The input to the LOR preconditioner code is the residual of the iterative solution $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ at a given iteration (like all other preconditioners in Nektar++).
- The LOR space ($\mathbf{H}_L$) is generated at the `PreconditionerLOR::v_BuildPreconditioner` step, using the `MeshGraph::LinearMeshGraph` method. This method has further setups to handle the LOR space for each element type (`LinMeshSetUp1DGeom`, `LinMeshSetUp2DGeom`, `LinMeshSetUpTetGeom`, `LinMeshSetUpPrismGeom`). A coefficient map (`m_ho2lor`) is also generated during this step to handle the transformations between HO and LOR spaces and vice versa.
- Interpolation of the solution from the HO discretization to the LOR space is performed using an appropriately constructed generalized Vandermonde matrix $\mathcal{V}$, which depends on the choice of the higher-order expansion basis (MODIFIED or

GLL_LAGRANGE). This interpolation is managed by `MultiplyByBlockMatrix` operations in the `PreconditionerLOR::v_DoPreconditioner` routine. Special keys (`eGLLToCoeffs` and `eEquiSpacedToCoeffs`) and their implementations are defined in the `ExpList` and `StdExpansion` classes to handle this process.

- After interpolating to the LOR space, the linear system is solved using an appropriate inner-iteration strategy. This is done using `m_LORLinSys->SolveLinearSystem` within `PreconditionerLOR::v_DoPreconditioner`.
- The solution from the LOR mesh is then mapped back to the HO space and subsequently transformed onto the original expansion basis by applying the inverse of the $\mathcal{V}$ matrix operation. Essentially, this reverses the steps taken before solving the LOR system.
- Appropriate scatter-gather transformations are handled using the assembly maps (`m_ho2lor`) in both spaces.

LOR spaces for different element types

The choice of discretisation in the LOR space has a bearing on the conditioning properties of the LOR preconditioner. There are two options for the point distribution in the LOR space - equispaced and GLL distribution. The GLL distribution is consistent with the spectral equivalence of the HO-LOR spaces. Still, the former option is solely available to test the preconditioner performance for an equidistant point spacing. The default point distribution for the LOR preconditioner is GLL distribution. It can be activated using the property `LORPointDistribution`, with the options `GLL` and `Equispaced`.

There are two options to discretise the quadrilaterals in the LOR space in the Nektar++ implementation following the work of Canuto [16], namely $\mathcal{Q}1$ and $\mathcal{P}1$ elements. The differences can be seen in Figure 9.6, where for a given quadrilateral element at a fixed polynomial order the GLL points in the LOR space can either be formulated with $\mathcal{Q}1$ (quadrilateral) elements or $\mathcal{P}1$ (triangular) elements. Notice that there can be many

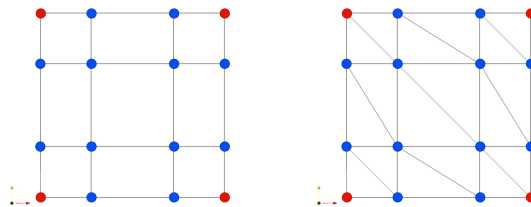


Figure 9.6 Available options for the LOR grids for the quadrilateral elements in 2D. The red dots correspond to the original HO element, and the blue dots are the GLL points in the LOR for $P=3$. Left: $\mathcal{Q}1$ configuration, Right: $\mathcal{P}1$ configuration.

possible orientations for $\mathcal{P}1$ elements, and the choice in Figure 9.6 is one such possibility. There are no such options for triangular elements in the LOR space as they can only

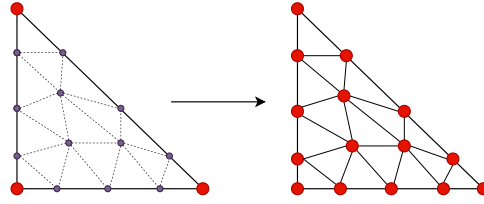


Figure 9.7 Conceptual representation of the creating the LOR space for triangles. The figure on the right shows the LOR space for a higher order triangular element at $P=4$, which is viewed as a collocated Lagrange basis at $P=1$ on ξ_{ele} points indicated by red dots. The higher-order element on the left currently shows the nodal expansion basis, which is purely for visualisation.

be discretised in further smaller P1 elements. It can be activated using the property `LORSimplex`, with the options `False` for $Q1$ (default) and `True` for $\mathcal{P}1$.

The LOR discretisation for triangles requires a different strategy. For a nodal expansion in triangles, that a closed-form expression for Lagrange polynomial does not exist like in the case of tensorial product of modal expansions for Gauss-Lobatto-Legendre (GLL) nodal points. Thus, the formation of LOR space, which is always a grid of collocated nodal points, can't be created in a straightforward manner for triangles with either choice of higher-order expansion basis and requires shifting the problem to electrostatic points (ξ_{ele}). The problem is interpolated to the LOR space after this shift. The visualisation of the process is seen in Figure 9.7, but in reality the construction of the generalised Vandemonde matrix $\mathcal{V}$ takes care of this shift of basis operation.

Tetrahedrons and Prisms follow a similar approach for the construction of the LOR space. The visualisation of this construction is seen in Fig. 9.8. Fig. 9.8a and 9.8b show the LOR space for tetrahedrons at $P = 3$ and 6. Fig. 9.8c and 9.8d show the LOR space for prisms at $P = 3$ and 6, where a prismatic domain expansion is achieved by extending the triangular nodal expansion by making a tensor product with the Lagrange polynomial in the third direction.

LOR setup - Available options

LOR preconditioner provides various options to setup and solve the preconditioned system. These settings work when the `GLOBALSYSOLNINFO` has:

```
1 <I PROPERTY="GlobalSysSoln"      VALUE="IterativeFull" />
2 <I PROPERTY="Preconditioner"     VALUE="LOR" />
3 <I PROPERTY="LinSysIterSolver"   VALUE="GMRES" />
```

The full list is found below:

```
1 <I PROPERTY="GlobalSysSoln"      VALUE="IterativeFull" />
2 <I PROPERTY="Preconditioner"     VALUE="LOR" />
3 <I PROPERTY="LinSysIterSolver"   VALUE="GMRES" />
4 <I PROPERTY="LORSolverType"      VALUE="DirectFull" />
5 <I PROPERTY="LORPointDistribution" VALUE="GLL" />
```

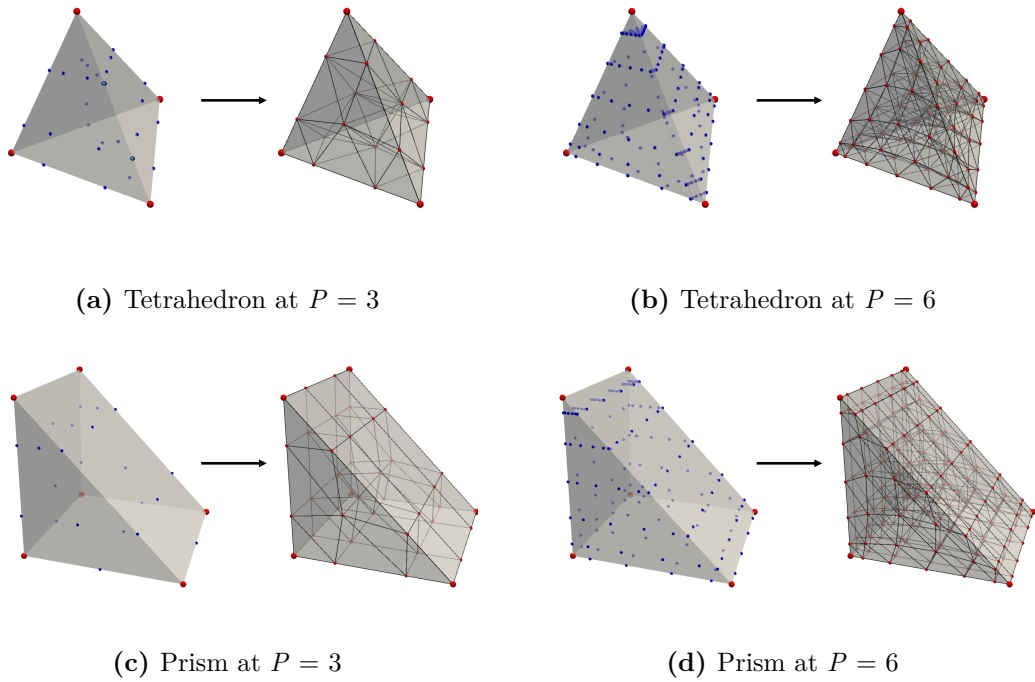


Figure 9.8 Visual representation of the creating the LOR space for simplices at $P = 3$ and 6. Within each subfigure, the figure on the right shows the LOR space for a HO element on the left. The LOR space is viewed as a collocated Lagrange basis at $P=1$ indicated by red dots, with on ξ_{ele} points in the interior and ξ_{GLL} points constrained the boundary. One can identify this by looking at any of the triangular faces for the simplices.

```
6 <| PROPERTY="LORSimplex" VALUE="False" />
```

1. `LORSolverType` - The type of solver to use for the inner iteration in the LOR preconditioner, i.e. working on the LOR mesh. most commonly used are `DirectFull`, `PETScFull`. Rest are quite experimental, and do not give great performance. They have not been tested extensively in 3D. Options:
 - `DirectFull`: Direct solve on $Ax = b$. Use this with caution when your problem size is greater than 2000 DOF.
 - `XxtFull`: Parallel direct solve on $Ax = b$. Not well tested.
 - `IterativeFull`: Apply available native linear solvers to solve the LOR system.
 - `Preconditioner`: Option to further apply a preconditioner on the LOR mesh.
2. `LORPointDistribution` - Options: `GLL` (default), `Equispaced`
3. `LORSimplex` - Options: `True` means $\mathcal{P}1$ type element for quads in the LOR space, `False` means $\mathcal{Q}1$ type element

The following options are available when `LORSolverType` = `IterativeFull`

1. `LORLinSysIterSolver`: Options: All available native linear solvers in Nektar++. Default: `ConjugateGradient`.
2. `LORPreconditioner`: Applying a further preconditioner on the LOR space. Default: `Diagonal`.
3. `LORFixedIterations`: Applying a fixed number of iterations on the `LORLinSysIterSolver`.
4. `LORIterativeTolerance`: The tolerance for the inner loop solver in the LOR preconditioner.

Example:

```
1 <| PROPERTY="LORLinSysIterSolver" VALUE="GMRES" />
2 <| PROPERTY="LORPreconditioner" VALUE="FullLinearSpace" />
3 <| PROPERTY="LORFixedIterations" VALUE="06" />
4 <| PROPERTY="LORIterativeTolerance" VALUE="1e-4" />
```

To use the AMG solver from BoomerAMG to solve the LOR system when `LORSolverType` = `PETScFull`, we advise the following settings:

For one V-cycle of BoomerAMG at every iteration (efficient for large 3D cases)

```
1 -ksp_type preonly
2 -pc_type hypre
3 -pc_hypre_type boomeramg
4 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_max_iter 1
```

For applying multiple V-cycles to solve under a certain tolerance (reduces outer iterations, but can be time consuming for large cases)

```
1 -ksp_rtol 1e-4 #choose your tolerance, keep it high
2 -ksp_type richardson
3 -pc_type hypre
4 -pc_hypre_type boomeramg
```

Reliable set of AMG settings for BoomerAMG for non-symmetric Poisson system resulting from LOR discretisation.

```
1 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_coarsen_type hmis
2 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_relax_type_all sor/jacobi
3 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_grid_sweeps_all 2
4 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_strong_threshold 0.7 #0.25 for 2D cases
5 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_interp_type ext+i
```

```
6 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_P_max 2  
7 -pc_hypre_boomeramg_truncfactor 0.3
```

Inside the Library: GlobalMapping

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the GlobalMapping Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use research article by Cantwell et al. [14] and the book [4] as our principle references. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the GlobalMapping Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

10.1 The Fundamentals Behind GlobalMapping

Based upon the appendix in [14], we outline a rigorous derivation of the Laplace-Beltrami operator. We use the convention that indices appearing once in the upper position and once in the lower position are considered dummy indices and are implicitly summed over their range, while non-repeated indices are considered free to take any value. Derivatives are also denoted using the lower-index comma notation, for example $g_{ij,k}$. *Covariant* vectors such as the gradient are those which, under a change of coordinate system, change under the same transformation in order to maintain coordinate system invariance. In contrast, *contravariant* vectors, such as velocity, should remain fixed under a coordinate transformation requiring that their components change under the inverse of the transformation to maintain invariance. With this in mind, we now construct the fundamental differential operators we require for a 2-dimensional manifold embedded in a 3-dimensional space. In order to express these operators in curvilinear coordinates we start by assuming that we have a smooth surface parametrization given by

$$\mathbf{x}(\xi^1, \xi^2) := (x^1(\xi^1, \xi^2), x^2(\xi^1, \xi^2), x^3(\xi^1, \xi^2)).$$

Next we will define the Jacobian of $\mathbf{x}$ as the tensor

$$J_i^j = \frac{\partial x^j}{\partial \xi^i}$$

where J_i^j can be viewed as a covariant surface vector (by fixing the upper index) or as a contravariant space vector (by fixing the lower index). The surface metric tensor g_{ij} can be defined in terms of the J_i^j as

$$g_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^3 J_i^k J_j^k. \quad (10.1)$$

which can be considered to transform a contravariant quantity to a covariant quantity. Similarly the conjugate tensor g^{ij} , which does the reverse transformation, is given by

$$g^{11} = g_{22}/g, \quad g^{12} = g^{21} = -g_{12}/g, \quad g^{22} = g_{11}/g, \quad (10.2)$$

where g is the determinant of g_{ij} . The metric tensor and its conjugate satisfy the condition

$$\delta_i^j = g_{ik} g^{jk} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i = j, \\ 0, & \text{if } i \neq j. \end{cases}$$

To construct the divergence operator we will also need the derivative of g with respect to components of the metric, g_{ij} . We know that $\mathbf{g}$ is invertible and from linear algebra we have that the inverse of the metric (10.2) satisfies $\mathbf{g}^{-1} = \frac{1}{g} \tilde{\mathbf{g}}^\top$, where $\tilde{\mathbf{g}}$ is the cofactor matrix of $\mathbf{g}$. Therefore $\tilde{\mathbf{g}}^\top = g\mathbf{g}^{-1}$, or in components $\tilde{g}^{ij} = g(g^{-1})_{ji}$. Using Jacobi's formula for the derivative of a matrix determinant with respect its entries, and since $\mathbf{g}$ is invertible, the derivative of the metric determinant is

$$\frac{\partial g}{\partial g_{ij}} = \text{tr} \left(\tilde{\mathbf{g}}^\top \frac{\partial \mathbf{g}}{\partial g_{ij}} \right) = \tilde{g}^{ij} = g(g^{-1})_{ji} = g g^{ij}. \quad (10.3)$$

10.1.1 Divergence operator

The partial derivative of a tensor with respect to a manifold coordinate system is itself not a tensor. In order to obtain a tensor, one has to use *covariant* derivative, defined below. The covariant derivative of a contravariant vector is given by

$$\nabla_k a^i = a_{,k}^i + a^j \Gamma_{jk}^i. \quad (10.4)$$

where Γ_{jk}^i are *Christoffel Symbols of the second kind*. The *Christoffel symbols of the first kind* are defined by

$$\Gamma_{ijk} = \frac{1}{2} [g_{kj,i} + g_{ik,j} - g_{ij,k}].$$

Here we note that Γ_{ijk} is symmetric in the first two indices. To obtain the Christoffel symbols of the second kind we formally raise the last index using the conjugate tensor,

$$\Gamma_{ij}^l = \Gamma_{ijk} g^{kl} \quad (10.5)$$

which retains the symmetry in the lower two indices. We can now express the derivatives of the metric tensor in terms of the Christoffel symbols as

$$g_{ij,k} = \Gamma_{ikj} + \Gamma_{jki} = g_{lj}\Gamma_{ik}^l + g_{li}\Gamma_{jk}^l.$$

We now define the divergence operator on the manifold, $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{X} = \nabla_k X^k$. Consider first the derivative of the determinant of the metric tensor g with respect to the components of some local coordinates system ξ^1, ξ^2 . We apply the chain rule, making use of the derivative of the metric tensor with respect to components of the metric (10.3) and the relationship (10.5), to get

$$\frac{\partial g}{\partial \xi^k} = \frac{\partial g}{\partial g_{ij}} \frac{\partial g_{ij}}{\partial \xi^k} = g g^{ij} g_{ij,k} = g g^{ij} (\Gamma_{ikj} + \Gamma_{jki}) = g (\Gamma_{ik}^i + \Gamma_{jk}^j) = 2g \Gamma_{ik}^i. \quad (10.6)$$

We can therefore express the Christoffel symbol Γ_{ik}^i in terms of this derivative as

$$\Gamma_{ik}^i = \frac{1}{2g} \frac{\partial g}{\partial \xi^k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \frac{\partial \sqrt{g}}{\partial \xi^k}. \quad (10.7)$$

Finally, by substituting for Γ_{ik}^i in the expression for the divergence operator

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_k X^k &= X^k_{,k} + X^i \Gamma_{ki}^k \\ &= X^k_{,k} + X^k \Gamma_{ik}^i \\ &= X^k_{,k} + X^k \frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} (\sqrt{g})_{,k} \end{aligned}$$

we can deduce a formula for divergence of a contravariant vector as

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{X} = \nabla_k X^k = \frac{(X^k \sqrt{g})_{,k}}{\sqrt{g}} \quad (10.8)$$

10.1.2 Laplacian operator

The covariant derivative (gradient) of a scalar on the manifold is identical to the partial derivative, $\nabla_k \phi = \phi_{,k}$. To derive the Laplacian operator we need the contravariant form of the covariant gradient above which can be found by raising the index using the metric tensor, giving

$$\nabla^k \phi = g^{kj} \phi_{,j}, \quad (10.9)$$

and substituting (10.9) for X^k in (10.8) to get the Laplacian operator on the manifold as

$$\Delta_M \phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \left(\sqrt{g} g^{ij} \phi_{,j} \right)_{,i}. \quad (10.10)$$

10.1.3 Anisotropic diffusion

We now extend the above operator to allow for anisotropic diffusion in the domain by deriving an expression for the surface conductivity from the ambient conductivity. The gradient of a surface function scaled by the ambient conductivity tensor $\tilde{\nabla}^p$ is given by

$$\tilde{\nabla}^p f = g^{mp} J_m^l \sigma_{kl} J_j^k g^{ij} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}. \quad (10.11)$$

The surface gradient is mapped to the ambient space through the Jacobian J_j^k , scaled by the ambient conductivity, and mapped back to the surface through J_m^l . The anisotropic Laplacian operator is given by

$$\tilde{\nabla}^2 f = \nabla_k \tilde{\nabla}^k f = \nabla_k \tilde{\sigma}^{ij} \nabla_j f \quad (10.12)$$

Therefore the surface conductivity tensor can be computed using the Jacobian tensor and the inverse metric as

$$\tilde{\sigma} = \mathbf{g}^{-1} \mathbf{J} \sigma \mathbf{J}^\top \mathbf{g}^{-1}. \quad (10.13)$$

10.1.4 Anisotropic Laplacian operator

Anisotropic diffusion is important in many applications. In the ambient Euclidean space, this can be represented by a diffusivity tensor σ in the Laplacian operator as

$$\Delta_M = \nabla \cdot \sigma \nabla.$$

On our manifold, we seek the generalisation of 10.10, in the form

$$\tilde{\Delta}_M \phi = \nabla_j \tilde{\sigma}_i^j \nabla^i \phi.$$

where the $\tilde{\sigma}_i^j$ are entries in the surface diffusivity. For a contravariant surface vector a^j we can find the associated space vector A^i as $A^i = J_j^i a^j$. Similarly if A_i is a covariant space vector, then $a_j = J_j^i A_i$ is a covariant surface vector. Using these we can construct the anisotropic diffusivity tensor $\tilde{\sigma}$ on the manifold by constraining the ambient diffusivity tensor σ to the surface. The contravariant surface gradient $\nabla^i \phi$ is mapped to the corresponding space vector, which lies in the tangent plane to the surface. This is scaled by the ambient diffusivity and then projected back to a covariant surface vector. Finally, we use the conjugate metric to convert back to a contravariant form. The resulting surface Laplacian is

$$\tilde{\Delta}_M \phi = \nabla_m g^{lm} J_l^k \sigma_{jk} J_i^j \nabla^i \phi.$$

Following on from this we deduce that

$$\tilde{\sigma}_i^j = g^{jm} J_m^l \sigma_{lk} J_i^k.$$

It can be seen that in the case of isotropic diffusion that $\tilde{\sigma}_i^j = \delta_j^i \Leftrightarrow \sigma = \mathbf{I}$,

$$\tilde{\sigma}_i^j = g^{jm} J_m^k \sigma_{lk} J_j^l = g^{jm} J_m^k J_j^l = g^{jm} g_{mj} = \delta_j^i.$$

10.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within GlobalMapping

10.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within GlobalMapping

Inside the Library: FieldUtils

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the `FieldUtils` Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use the book by Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] as our principle reference. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the `FieldUtils` Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

11.1 The Fundamentals Behind FieldUtils

The `FieldUtils` library contains the classes used by the `FieldConvert` utility, whose broad purpose is to read in data from a file, perform some operation on this data, and write the resulting data to an output file. A full description of the available operations are available in the user guide.

In general, this consist of three stages, referred to as input, process, and output. The properties common to all stages are captured by the `Module` base class. The input stage is represented by the `InputModule` class, the process stage by `ProcessModule`, and the output stage by `OutputModule`; all derived from `Module`. Each of these classes have many derived classes for performing specific functions, and these are known as *modules*. The class inheritance diagram for the `Module` class is shown in figure ?? . The purpose of modules in general is to operate on member variables of the `Field` struct.

11.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within FieldUtils

This sections aim to provide a detailed description of the data structures within the `FieldUtils` directory and how they are used by `FieldConvert`.

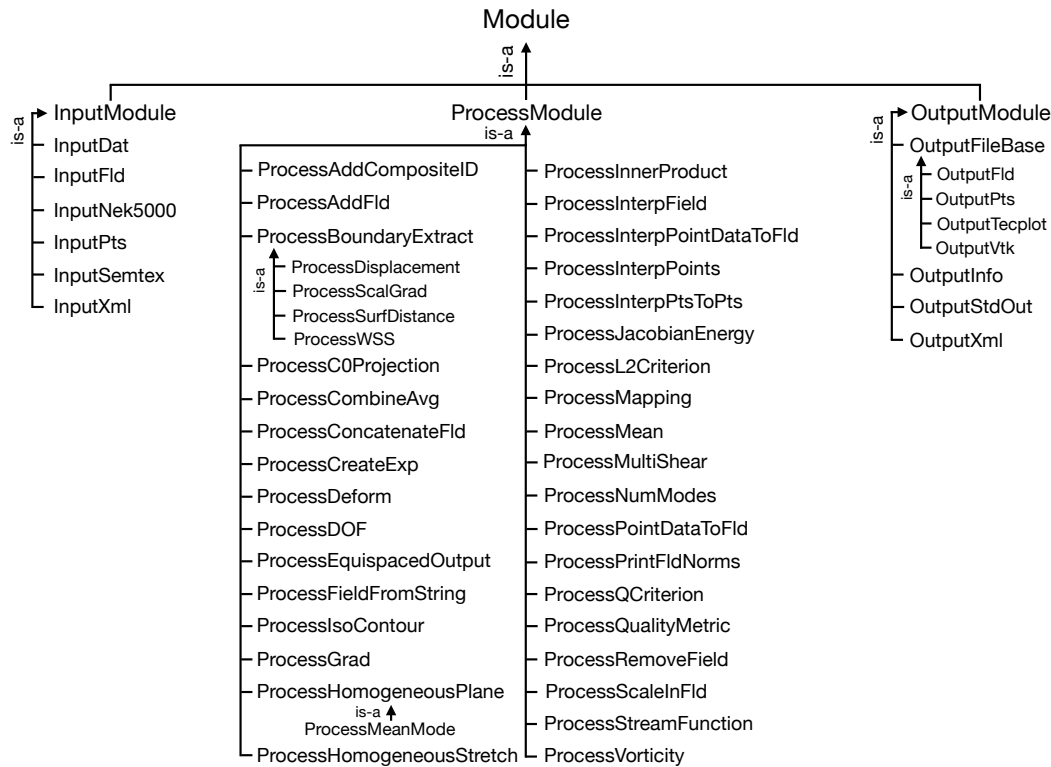


Figure 11.1 Module class inheritance

11.2.1 Overview of how modules work

A specific module is identified by a `ModuleKey`, a type defined as a `std::pair` consisting of a `ModuleType` and `std::string`. `ModuleType` is an enum that has members `eInputModule`, `eProcessModule`, and `eOutputModule`, corresponding to whether it is an input, process, or output module respectively. The `std::string` is referred to in this document as the *module string*.¹ For example, for the `InputFld` module, the `ModuleType` is `eInputModule`, and the module string is `fld`. The instantiation of a particular module follows the factory pattern, with the `ModuleKey` and a shared pointer to a `Field` object passed as arguments to `Module::GetModuleFactory().CreateInstance`. This shared pointer to the `Field` object is stored as a member variable of `Module` called `m_f`.

Some modules have configuration options, which are stored in the `m_config` member variable of `Module`, which is a `std::map` with the key being a string holding the option name and the value being a `ConfigOption` object (described below). The configuration options for the input and output modules simply refer to the name of the input and output file respectively `m_config` is initialised in the module's constructor by calling

¹A module may have multiple corresponding module strings

the `ConfigOption` constructor, and its value is set by `Module::RegisterConfig`. The `Module::SetDefaults` function sets default configuration options for those which have not been set.

Each module has a function named `Process`, whether defined in its own class definition or in that of its parent class, which implements the main functionality of the module. To *run* a module refers to calling `Process`. `Process` typically operates on member variables of `m_f`. Each module also has a certain priority, which dictates in what order it should be run in relation to other modules, which is captured by a member of the `ModulePriority` enum, defined in `Module.h`. The available module priorities are `eCreateGraph`, `eCreateFieldData`, `eModifyFieldData`, `eCreateExp`, `eFillExp`, `eModifyExp`, `eBndExtraction`, `eCreatePts`, `eConvertExpToPts`, `eModifyPts`, and `eOutput`.

What follows is detailed description of the member variables and functions of `Module`, `InputModule`, `ProcessModule`, and `OutputModule`.

11.2.2 Module

Member variables

- `m_f`: a `FieldSharedPtr`.
- `m_config` (protected): a `std::map<std::string, ConfigOption>` used to store the configuration option for the module.

Member functions

- A constructor takes as an argument a `FieldSharedPtr`, and sets `m_f` to it.
- The default constructor (protected) does nothing.
- Pure virtual `Process(boost::program_options::variables_map)` implements the main functionality of the derived class.
- Pure virtual `GetModuleName()` returns the name of the derived class.
- Pure virtual `GetModuleDescription()` returns a description of the functionality of the specific module represented by derived class.
- Virtual `GetModulePriority()` returns the `ModulePriority` of the derived class.
- `RegisterConfig(std::string key, std::string value = "")` looks for `key` in `m_config`, and if it exists, sets the corresponding `ConfigOption` to have `m_beenSet = true`, and `m_value` equal to 1 if it is a boolean option, and to `value` otherwise.
- `PrintConfig()` prints out all options for a module.

- `SetDefaults()` sets `m_value` to the default value (defined in the respective module) if `m_beenSet` is false.

11.2.3 InputModule

Member variables

- `m_allowedFiles` (protected): `std::set<std::string>` describing the file types that are compatible with the module.

Member functions

- A constructor takes as an argument a `FieldSharedPtr`, and creates a pair in `m_config` with key "infile" and value a `ConfigOption` with `m_isBool = false`, `m_value = ""`, and `m_desc = "Input filename."`.
- `AddFile(std::string fileType, std::string fileName)` checks to see if `fileType` is in `m_allowedFiles`, and then adds `fileName` to `m_f`'s `m_inputfiles` entry with key `fileType`.
- `GuessFormat(std::string fileName)` attempts to guess the format of `fileName` using the characters in the file.
- `PrintSummary()` prints the amount of memory taken up by `m_f->m_data`.

11.2.4 ProcessModule

Member functions

- The default constructor does nothing.
- A constructor takes as an argument a `FieldSharedPtr` and does nothing.

11.2.5 OutputModule

Member variables

- `m_fldFile` (protected): a `std::ofstream` corresponding with the file that data will be output to.

Member functions

- A constructor takes as an argument a `FieldSharedPtr`, and creates a pair in `m_config` with key "outfile" and value a `ConfigOption` with `m_isBool = false`, `m_value = ""`, and `m_desc = "Output filename."`.

- `OpenStream()` opens the output file specified by `m_value` in `m_config`'s entry with key "outfile".

11.2.6 ConfigOption

This struct is defined `Module.h`. It represents the properties of a module option.

Member variables

- `m_isBool`: a `bool` that is true if the option is a boolean (and so its value does not need to be specified).
- `m_beenSet`: a `bool` that is true if the option has been set using `Module::RegisterConfig`. If it is false, the default value will be put into `m_value`.
- `m_value`: a `std::string` that is the value of the option.
- `defValue`: a `std::string` that is the default value of the option.
- `m_desc`: a `std::string` that is the description of the option.

Member functions

- The default constructor sets `m_isBool` and `m_beenSet` to false.
- A constructor sets `m_isBool`, `m_defValue`, `m_desc` from respective arguments `bool isBool`, `std::string defValue`, and `std::string desc`, as well as setting `m_beenSet` to false.

11.2.7 The Field struct

The `Field` struct is essentially a container to hold information about the field variables.

Member variables

- `m_fielddef`: a `std::vector` of shared pointers to `FieldDefinitions` objects. The `FieldDefinitions` struct describes the format of binary field data, and contains parameters including the element shape type, the basis used and its order, and the field variable names.
- `m_data`: a `std::vector` of `std::vector<double>`s used to hold the field data.
- `m_exp`: a `std::vector` of shared pointers to `ExpList` objects. The `ExpList` classes represent the expansion over the whole domain.
- `m_variables`: a `std::vector` of `std::strings` that holds field variable names.

- `m_numHomogeneousDir`: an `int` that holds the number of homogeneous directions.
- `m_declareExpansionAsContField`: a `bool` that sets the expansion to be continuous, corresponding to the `ContField` derived classes of `ExpList`.
- `m_declareExpansionAsDisContField`: a `bool` that sets the expansion to be discontinuous, corresponding to the `DisContField` derived classes of `ExpList`.
- `m_requireBoundaryExpansion`: a `bool` that determines whether the expansion is needed on the boundaries.
- `m_useFFT`: a `bool` that determines whether to use a fast Fourier transform.
- `m_comm`: a shared pointer to a `Comm` object that contains the MPI communicator.
- `m_session`: a shared pointer to a `SessionReader` object, which stores information given in an XML session file.
- `m_graph`: a shared pointer to a `MeshGraph` object, which stores the mesh.
- `m_inputfiles`: a `std::map` with the key being a `std::string` holding the file type, and the value being a `std::vector` of `std::strings` holding the names of the files with this type.
- `m_writeBndFld`: a `bool` that determines if the field is written on the boundary.
- `m_bndRegionsToWrite`: a `std::vector` of unsigned ints that dictates which boundaries to write.
- `m_addNormals`: a `bool` that determines whether surface normals are output.
- `m_fieldPts`: a shared pointer to a `PtsField` object.
- `m_fieldMetaDataMap`: a shared pointer to a `FieldMetaDataMap` object, which stores field metadata.
- `m_fld` (private): a `std::map` with the key being a `std::string` holding a file type and the value being a shared pointer to a `FieldIO` object for this file type. The `FieldIO` class is used for file input/output.

Member functions

- `SetUpFirstExpList(int NumHomogeneousDir, bool fldfilegiven = false)` returns a shared pointer to an `ExpList` object based on `m_session`, `m_graph`, and `m_flddef`.
- `FieldIOForFile(std::string filename)` constructs a shared pointer to a `FieldIO` object for the file named `filename` if there does not already exist an entry in `m_fld` corresponding to its file type. If one does exist, it is simply returned.

- `AppendExpList(int NumHomogeneousDir, std::string var = "DefaultVar", bool NewField = false)` returns a shared pointer to an `ExpList` object based on `m_session`, `m_graph`, `m_fielddef`, and `m_exp[0]`.
- `ClearField()` empties `m_session`, `m_graph`, `fieldPts`, `m_exp`, `m_fielddef`, `m_data`, and `m_variables`.
- `CreateExp(boost::program_options::variables_map &vm, bool newExp)` populates `m_exp`. If `newExp` is true, the expansion is created from scratch; if false, it is updated with new field data.
- `SetUpExp(boost::program_options::variables_map &vm)` determines whether `m_exp` needs to be populated by calling `CreateExp`, and if so, whether it needs to be created from scratch, or just updated with new field data.

11.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within FieldUtils

Inside the Library: SolverUtils

In this chapter, we walk the reader through the different components of the SolverUtils Directory. We begin with a discussion of the mathematical fundamentals, for which we use the book by Karniadakis and Sherwin [44] as our principle reference. We then provide the reader with an overview of the primary data structures introduced within the SolverUtils Directory (often done through C++ objects), and then present the major algorithms – expressed as either object methods or functions – employed over these data structures.

12.1 The Fundamentals Behind SolverUtils

12.2 The Fundamental Data Structures within SolverUtils

12.3 The Fundamental Algorithms within SolverUtils

12.3.1 Filters

Lagrangian Points Tracking

In the filter `FilterLagrangianPoints`, Lagrangian points can be tracked in parallel. In this filter, Points are stored in two copies. One copy is the stationary points, which are fixed in the thread. Another copy is the mobile points, which can move based on the mesh partition. When evaluating the physics values on the mobile points, we first search the local mesh partition. For the points that are not found in the local partition, their information is packed into a global array and synced for all thread. A global search is performed. Once the thread whose mesh partition contains some unfound mobile points, these points in the mobile copy are moved to the corresponding thread. After evaluation the physics values on the mobile points, the data are sent back to thread which contains the corresponding stationary points. The design detail of this filter is shown in figure ??.

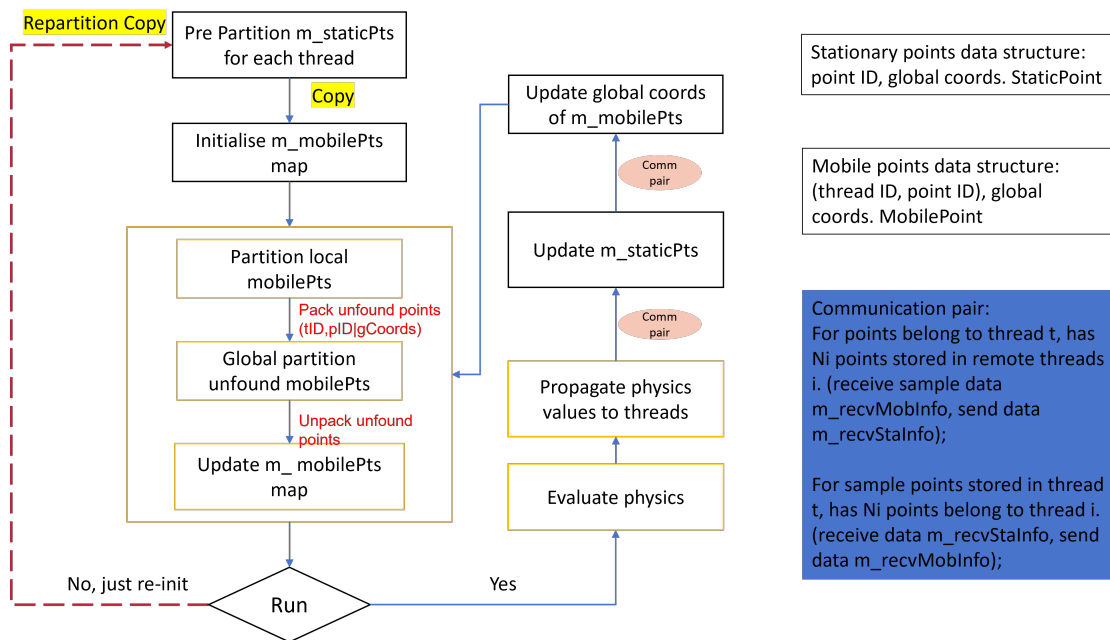


Figure 12.1 Design of the FilterLagrangianPoints class

Part II

Solvers

In this part of the developer's guide, we walk you through development aspects of the various solvers that are available within publicly-available *Nektar++* repository. For each of these solvers, user guides have been developed that help you see how to use these for various engineering applications. We encourage you to use these solvers in your science and engineering work flows. If you find that the current solvers do not meet your needs and consequently you end up building a new solver based upon our framework, we encourage you to consider submitting this to us for incorporation in the publicly-available master branch.

ADRSolver: Solving the Advection-Reaction-Diffusion Equation

In this chapter, we walk the reader through our Advection-Reaction-Diffusion Solver (ADRSolver).

IncNavierStokesSolver: Solving the Incompressible Navier-Stokes Equations

In this chapter, we walk the reader through our 2D, quasi-3D and 3D incompressible Navier-Stokes Solver (IncNavierStokesSolver).

14.1 Fundamental Theories of IncNavierStokesSolver

14.1.1 Governing Equations

A useful tool implemented in Nektar++ is the incompressible Navier Stokes solver that allows one to solve the governing equation for viscous Newtonians fluids governed by

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u} = -\nabla p + \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{f}, \quad (14.1a)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0, \quad (14.1b)$$

where $\mathbf{u}$ is the velocity, p is the specific pressure (including density) and ν the kinematic viscosity.

14.1.2 Time discretisation

Velocity-correction scheme

An efficient approach to solve the incompressible navier-stokes equations are splitting schemes. These schemes decouple the monolithic system of the original momentum and mass conservation into subsequent steps that separate solving into a Poisson problem and three velocity problems, assuming a three dimensional problem. One type of the

splitting are the velocity-correction type schemes. They begin with an initial step that evaluates the advection term and subsequent steps to solve for the new pressure p^{n+1} and velocity vector $\mathbf{u}^{n+1}$, where we use the formulation $u^n = u(t^n = n\Delta t)$ to denote the discrete time.

Within Nektar++ we consider a rotational velocity-correction scheme `VelocityCorrectionScheme` that enables higher-order time accuracy despite the splitting [42]. The first step evaluates the advection term $N(\mathbf{u})^n = [\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^n$ explicitly. Subsequently, the algorithm solves a pressure Poisson problem of the form

$$\nabla p^{n+1} = -\frac{1}{\Delta t} \left(\gamma \tilde{\mathbf{u}}^{n+1} - \sum_{q=0}^{J-1} \alpha_q \mathbf{u}^{n-q} \right) - [\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^n - \nu \nabla \times \nabla \times \mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{f}^{n+1}, \quad (14.2)$$

where α_q are the coefficients of the backwards difference formula summation that approximates the timer derivative. The equation is supplemented with appropriate pressure boundary conditions to enable higher-order time accuracy [42]. These boundary conditions are

$$\frac{\partial p^{n+1}}{\partial \mathbf{n}} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \left[\frac{1}{\Delta t} \sum_{q=0}^{J-1} \alpha_q \mathbf{u}^{n-q} - [\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^n - \nu \nabla \times \nabla \times \mathbf{u}^n + \mathbf{f}^{n+1} \right]. \quad (14.3)$$

They are implemented within the `Extrapolation` class. The velocity equation uses the updated pressure p^{n+1} and solves a Helmholtz problem for each velocity component with

$$\frac{\gamma}{\Delta t} \mathbf{u}^{n+1} - \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \frac{1}{\Delta t} \sum_{q=0}^{J-1} \alpha_q \mathbf{u}^{n-q} - \nabla p^{n+1} - [\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^n + \mathbf{f}^{n+1}. \quad (14.4)$$

The right hand side for this equation is computed within `ViscousForcing` and the solution of the helmholtz problem happens within `ViscousSolve` via a call to `MultiRegions::HelmSolve`.

We also consider two different approaches to be unconditionally stable in the choice of time stepsize Δt . The sub-stepping scheme [60] is expressing the velocity-correction scheme in a semi-Lagrangian form. It expresses the material derivative in the Lagrangian frame of reference while the pressure and viscous terms are in the Eulerian frame as for the above scheme. Therefore, the scheme mainly changes the initial evaluation of the advection term, but does not change the subsequent pressure and velocity problems.

Starting with the material derivative in the Lagrangian form

$$\frac{D\mathbf{u}}{Dt} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u} = -\nabla p + \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u}. \quad (14.5)$$

Reference [42] proposes to discretise the unsteady term in time with a J th order BDF as

$$\frac{D\mathbf{u}}{Dt} = \frac{\mathbf{u}^{n+1} - \sum_{q=0}^{J-1} \alpha_q \mathbf{u}_d^{n-q}}{\Delta t} \quad (14.6)$$

where the $\mathbf{u}_d^{n-q}$ corresponds to the velocity at the departure point $\mathbf{x}_d = (x_d, y_d, z_d)$ and at time instance t^n .

To find the velocity field at the departure point, the unsteady advection equation is solved in an auxiliary pseudo-time $t^{n+1-q} < \tau < t^{n+1}$ where q stands for the total number of iterations executed in pseudo-time τ .

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\mathbf{u}}}{\partial \tau} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \hat{\mathbf{u}} = 0 \quad (14.7)$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{u}}$ is a complementary velocity field. The field represents the influence of convection on the examined flow, $\mathbf{u}$ is the divergence-free advection velocity. Having computed this updated velocity field, we evaluate the advection term for equation (14.2) and (14.3) to solve for the new pressure and velocity as in the semi-implicit form.

The sub-stepping does only change the evaluation of the advection term $\mathbf{N}$ and is implemented inside the class `SubsteppingExtrapolate`.

The implicit velocity-correction schemes `VCSImplicit` transforms the velocity equation to be unconditionally stable with respect to the CFL condition. The key difference to the semi-implicit scheme is a linearisation of the advection operator. The linearisation assumes that $\mathbf{u}^{n+1} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}^{n+1} \approx \tilde{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}^{n+1}$ where the advection velocity $\tilde{\mathbf{u}}$ is approximated by either an `extrapolation` of the form $\tilde{\mathbf{u}} \approx \sum_{q=0}^{J-1} \alpha_q \mathbf{u}^{n-q}$ [61] or an `updated velocity` that uses the new pressure p^{n+1} [24].

The velocity problem with linearisation becomes an advection-diffusion-reaction (ADR) problem. It is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\gamma}{\Delta t} \mathbf{u}^{n+1} - \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u}^{n+1} + \tilde{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}^{n+1} &= \frac{1}{\Delta t} \sum_{q=0}^{J-1} \alpha_q \mathbf{u}^{n-q} \\ &\quad - \nabla p^{n+1} + \mathbf{f}^{n+1}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.8)$$

This scheme is a child of the semi-implicit scheme and implemented in the class `VCSImplicit` with an appropriate extrapolation in `ImplicitExtrapolate`.

14.1.3 Spatial discretisation/Implementation

We implement the various time discretisations above with a spectral hp element method. Therefore, we transform the strong form equations for pressure and velocity to the weak form using the L2 inner product with basis functions ϕ . For the pressure equation (14.2),

we do the inner product with the derivative of the basis $\nabla\phi$ which leads to the equation

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega} \nabla\phi \cdot \nabla p^{n+1} &= \int_{\Omega} \phi \nabla \cdot \left(-\frac{\hat{\mathbf{u}}}{\Delta t} + [\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^{*n+1} - \mathbf{f}^{n+1} \right) \\ &\quad - \int_{\Gamma} \left[\phi \left(-\frac{\hat{\mathbf{u}}}{\Delta t} + [\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^{*n+1} + \nu \nabla \times \nabla \times \mathbf{u}^{*n+1} - \mathbf{f}^{n+1} \right) \right] \cdot \mathbf{n}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.9)$$

Then, taking the L2 inner product with the basis ψ for the velocity equation in equation 14.4 leads to the weak form

$$\int_{\Omega} \nabla\psi \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}^{n+1} + \frac{\gamma}{\nu \Delta t} \psi \mathbf{u}^{n+1} = -\frac{1}{\nu} \int_{\Omega} \psi \left(-\frac{\hat{\mathbf{u}}}{\Delta t} + \nabla p^{n+1} + [\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^{*n+1} - \mathbf{f}^{n+1} \right). \quad (14.10)$$

The final discrete data of the variables u, v, w, p are saved within an array of `ExpListSharedPtr` named `m_fields`. Each `ExpListSharePtr` in `m_fields` holds a reference to a `ContField` object that saves the data in coefficient `Coeff` and physical `Phys` space. For example, one can access the w-velocity data via `m_fields[2]->GetPhys()` which return an Array of the data in physical space (i.e. at the quadrature points) for each element. Note that the pressure is always the hint-most entry in `m_fields`. Also, it can separately be accessed via `m_pressure` which is simply reference to the last entry in `m_fields`.

14.2 Functions of the implementation

Table 14.1 presents the public functions that is responsible for performing the velocity-correction scheme (VCS).

Table 14.1 Table of variable and function mapping used in the incompressible flow solver to their mathematical operations

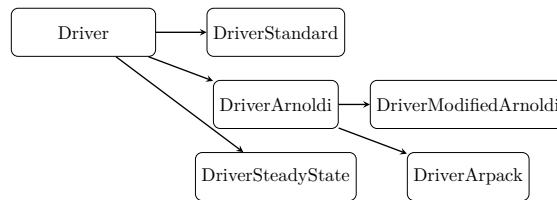
Variable/Function name	Physical meaning
<code>VelocityCorrectionScheme</code>	Constructor using the Session and MeshGraph objects.
<code>SetUpPressureForcing</code>	Compute RHS of pressure equation: $\int_{\Omega}$ in 14.9
<code>SetUpViscousForcing</code>	Compute RHS of Helmholtz equations, see 14.10
<code>SolvePressure</code>	Solves the pressure Poisson system $\nabla^2 p^{n+1} = f$
<code>SolveViscous</code>	Solves the Helmholtz equations $[\nabla^2 - \lambda] \mathbf{u}^{n+1} = \mathbf{f}$
<code>SolveUnsteadyStokesSystem</code>	Implicit part - Solve Poisson + d * Helmholtz
<code>EvaluateAdvection_SetPressureBCs</code>	Explicit part - Advection + Forcing: $[\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}]^{*n+1} - \mathbf{f}^{n+1}$ Also sets the pressure BCs: $\int_{\Gamma}$ in 14.9

14.3 Structure of the algorithm

1. The entry point is the `main()` function in `solvers/IncNavierStokesSolver/IncNavier-StokesSolver.cpp`

2. Session initialization (possibly reading)
3. Mesh graph creation, weights, polynomials, partition for parallel
4. Driver initialization, many Drivers are possible, e.g. Standard
5. Driver execution
6. Finalization specific tasks

The magic happens at the level of the Driver. This is where all the important stuff is selected. One of the possible rivers is selected:



During the initialization of the Driver object components of the solution process are created and initialized. The most common ones are:

- EvolutionOperator responsible for the type of problem. Possible values are: Non-linear (default), Direct (linear), Adjoint, TransientGrowth, SkewSymmetric
- EquationType that determines the problem to be solved e.g. UnsteadyNavierStokes
- SolverType, i.e. the scheme to be used such as the VelocityCorrection
- The ProjectionType (CG or DG, Homogenous ...) is initialized during initialization of the EquationSystem object. At this moment velocity and pressure variable fields are created.
- Need to add the information on where the time integration scheme is initialized.

CompressibleFlowSolver: Solving the Compressible Navier-Stokes Equations

In this chapter, we walk the reader through our 2D and 3D compressible Navier-Stokes Solver (CompressibleFlowSolver).

15.1 Fundamental Theories of CompressibleFlowSolver

15.1.1 Governing equations

The governing compressible Navier-Stokes equations, representing conservation of mass, momentum and energy, can be written in abridged form as

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} = L(\mathbf{U}) = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{H}; \quad \mathbf{H}_i = \mathbf{F}_i(\mathbf{U}) - \mathbf{G}_i(\mathbf{U}, \nabla \mathbf{U}), \quad (15.1)$$

where L is the analytical nonlinear spatial operator, $\mathbf{U}$ is the vector of conservative variables, $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{U})$ is the inviscid flux and $\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{U}, \nabla \mathbf{U})$ is the viscous flux.

15.1.2 Discretization

Spatial discretization

Various spatial discretization methods are supported, for example the WeakDG and FR for advection term, LDG and IP methods for the diffusion term. Here, we take the weakDG as example. The computational domain (Ω) is divided into N_e non-overlapping elements (Ω_e). The weak form of Eqs. (15.1) is obtained by multiplying the test function ϕ_p and performing integration by parts in Ω_e ,

$$\int_{\Omega_e} \frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} \phi_p d\Omega_e = \int_{\Omega_e} \nabla \phi_p \cdot \mathbf{H} d\Omega_e - \int_{\Gamma_e} \phi_p \mathbf{H}^n d\Gamma_e. \quad (15.2)$$

The fluxes are calculated at some quadrature points and a quadrature rule with N_Q quadrature points is adopted to calculate the integration in the element and N_Q^F quadrature points on element boundaries. This leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^{N_Q} \sum_{q=1}^N \phi_p(\mathbf{x}_i) w_i J_i \phi_q(\mathbf{x}_i) \frac{d\mathbf{u}_q}{dt} &= \sum_{i=1}^{N_Q} w_i J_i \nabla \phi_p(\mathbf{x}_i) \cdot \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{U}_{\delta,i}) \\ &\quad - \sum_{i=1}^{N_Q^F} \phi_p(\mathbf{x}_i^F) w_i^F J_i^F \hat{\mathbf{H}}_i^n, \end{aligned} \quad (15.3)$$

where $\mathbf{u}_q$ is the coefficient vector of the basis function. The whole discretization can be written in the following matrix form

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} &= \mathbf{M}^{-1} L_\delta(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{L}_\delta(\mathbf{u}_\delta) \\ &= \mathbf{M}^{-1} \left[\sum_{j=1}^d \mathbf{B}^T \mathbf{D}_j^T \mathbf{\Lambda}(wJ) \mathbf{H}_j - (\mathbf{B}^F \mathbf{M}_c)^T \mathbf{\Lambda}(w^F J^F) \hat{\mathbf{H}}^n \right], \end{aligned} \quad (15.4)$$

where d is the spatial dimension, $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{B}^T \mathbf{\Lambda}(wJ) \mathbf{B}$ is the mass matrix, $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents a diagonal matrix, $\mathbf{D}_j$ is the derivative matrix in the j th direction, $\mathbf{B}^F$ is the backward transformation matrix of ϕ^F and $\mathbf{M}_c$ is the mapping matrix between ϕ^F and ϕ , $\mathbf{J}$ is the interpolation matrix from quadrature points of a element to quadrature points of its element boundaries.

The weak DG scheme for the advection term is complete as long as a Riemann numerical flux is used to calculate the normal flux, $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^n(\mathbf{Q}^+, \mathbf{Q}^-, \mathbf{n})$, in which $\mathbf{Q}^+$ and $\mathbf{Q}^-$ are variable values on the exterior and interior sides of the element boundaries, respectively. Similarly, LDG or IP methods are needed to provide the numerical fluxes on element boundaries for the diffusion terms.

Time discretization

Various multi-step and multi-stage methods have been implemented in an object-oriented general linear methods framework. Here, the Runge-Kutta methods are took as examples. The i th stage of the Runge-Kutta method is

$$\mathbf{s}^{(i)} = \mathbf{u}^n + \Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} a_{ij} \mathcal{L}_\delta(\mathbf{u}_\delta^{(j)}), i = 1, 2 \dots s \quad (15.5)$$

$$\mathbf{u}^{(i)} = \mathbf{s}^{(i)} + \Delta t a_{ii} \mathcal{L}_\delta(\mathbf{u}^{(i)}), i = 1, 2 \dots s \quad (15.6)$$

$$\mathbf{U}_\delta^{(i)} = \mathbf{B} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}, \quad (15.7)$$

where a_{ij} is the coefficient of the Runge-Kutta method, $\mathbf{s}$ is a source term, $\mathbf{B}$ is the backward transform matrix. Finally, the solution of the new time step $(n+1)$ is calculated

by

$$\mathbf{U}^{n+1} = \mathbf{U}^n + \Delta t \sum_{i=1}^s b_i L(\mathbf{U}^{(i)}), \quad (15.8)$$

For explicit RK methods, $a_{ii} = 0$, the discretization is complete and straightforward.

Jacobian-free Newton-Krylov method

Eq. (15.6) of the implicit stages ($a_{ii} \neq 0$) can be written as the nonlinear system

$$\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{u}_\delta^{(i)}) = \mathbf{u}_\delta^{(i)} - \mathbf{s}^{(i)} - \Delta t a_{ii} \mathcal{L}_\delta(\mathbf{u}_\delta^{(i)}) = \mathbf{0}. \quad (15.9)$$

This system is iteratively solved by Newton's method [47] with the Newton step, $\Delta \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}^{k+1} - \mathbf{v}^k$, updated through the solution of the linear system

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{v}^k)}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \Delta \mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{v}^k). \quad (15.10)$$

where $\mathbf{v}^0 = \mathbf{s}^{(i)}$ is adopted as an initial guess. When the Newton residual is smaller than the convergence tolerance of the Newton iterations τ , which is

$$\|\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{v}^k)\| = \|\mathbf{R}(\mathbf{v}^k)\| \leq \tau, \quad (15.11)$$

$\mathbf{u}_{it}^{(i)} = \mathbf{v}^k$ is regarded as the approximate solution of the nonlinear system, where $\mathbf{R}$ is the remaining Newton residual vector $\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{u}_{it}^{(i)})$ after convergence.

The restarted generalized minimal residual method (GMRES) [58] is used for solving the linear problem (15.10). The Jacobian matrix and vector inner product operator is approximated by the following finite difference

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{N}}{\partial \mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{q} \simeq \frac{\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{u} + \epsilon \mathbf{q}) - \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{u})}{\epsilon}, \quad (15.12)$$

where ϵ is the step size of the finite difference approximation.

The use of good preconditioners in GMRES is very important for efficiently solving stiff linear systems. Instead of solving the system of Eq. (15.10) directly, one can get the same solution by solving the preconditioned linear system

$$\left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{N}}{\partial \mathbf{u}} \mathbf{P}^{-1} \right) (\mathbf{P} \triangle \bar{\mathbf{u}}^l) = -\mathbf{N}(\bar{\mathbf{u}}^l), \quad (15.13)$$

where $\mathbf{P}$ is the preconditioning matrix. A low memory block relaxed Jacobi iterative preconditioner is implemented.

15.2 Functions of the implementation

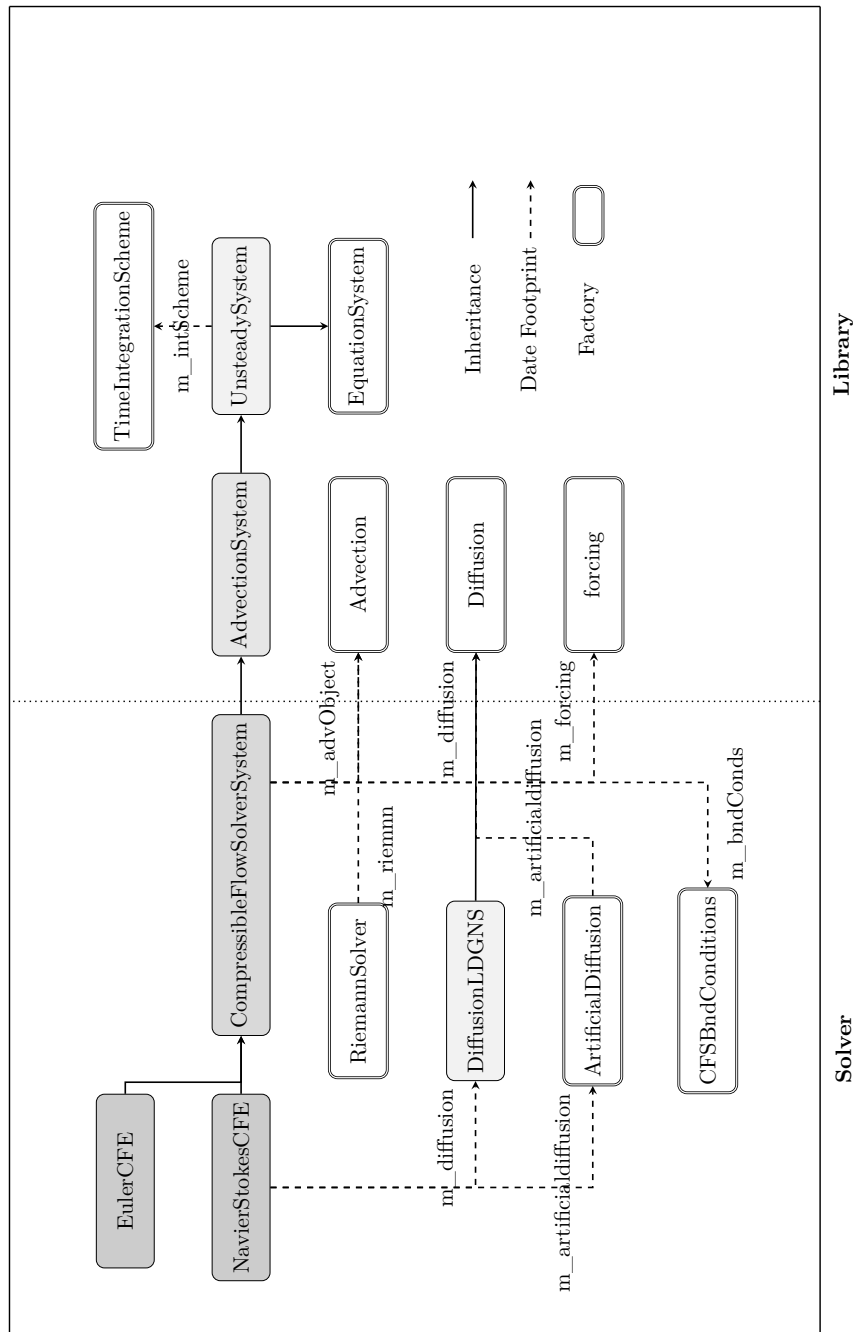
Table 15.1 lists the main functions of the explicit and implicit compressible flow solver. The discretization of the advection term mainly uses the `AdvectVolumeFlux` and `AdvectTraceFlux` to calculate the fluxes on the quadrature points of inside the element and on the element boundaries. Then, `IProductWRTDerivBase` and `AddTraceIntegral` are adopted to perform the integrations. Similarly, in the diffusion discretization, `DiffuseVolumeFlux` and `DiffuseTraceFlux` are implemented for calculating the fluxes, while `IProductWRTDerivBase` and `AddTraceIntegral` are for the integrations. For the diffusion term, spatial derivatives are needed and calculated using `DiffuseCalcDerivative`. For the interior penalty method an extra symmetric term may be needed and calculated by `AddDiffusionSymmFluxToCoeff`. The above functions forms the spatial operator of `DoOdeRhs` and the explicit solver in relatively complete coupled with a explicit time integration scheme. For the implicit solver, extra functions are needed. The `DoImplicitSolve` solves the nonlinear system, in which the `NonlinSysEvaluatorCoeff1D` evaluates the nonlinear system residual, `MatrixMultiplyMatrixFreeCoeff` calculates the Jacobian matrix vector inner product and `PreconCoeff` perform the preconditioning. Provided a specific implicit time integration scheme, the `DoImplicitSolve` helps solve the nonlinear system for implicit stages and the implicit solver is complete.

Table 15.1 Table of variable and function mapping used in the compressible flow solver to their mathematical operations

Variable/Function name	Physical meaning
<code>AdvectVolumeFlux</code>	Advection Euler flux: $\mathbf{F}_i$
<code>AdvectTraceFlux</code>	Advection (Riemann) numerical flux at trace: $\hat{\mathbf{F}}_i$
<code>IProductWRTDerivBase</code>	$\sum_{j=1}^d \mathbf{B}^T \mathbf{D}_j^T \mathbf{\Lambda}(wJ)$ operator to a vector
<code>AddTraceIntegral</code>	$(\mathbf{B}^T \mathbf{M}_c)^T \mathbf{\Lambda}(w^T J^T)$ to a vector
<code>MultiplyByElmInvMass</code>	Multiply the inverse of mass matrix to a vector
<code>DiffuseCalcDerivative</code>	Calculate the derivatives of a vector
<code>DiffuseVolumeFlux</code>	Analytical Diffusion flux: $\mathbf{G}_i$
<code>DiffuseTraceFlux</code>	Calculate the diffusion numerical flux $\hat{\mathbf{G}}$
<code>AddDiffusionSymmFluxToCoeff</code>	Add the integral of symmetric flux (special for IP)
<code>DoOdeRhs</code>	Calculate $\mathcal{L}_\delta(\mathbf{u}_\delta)$
<code>DoImplicitSolve</code>	Solve the nonlinear system in implicit time integrations
<code>NonlinSysEvaluatorCoeff1D</code>	Calculate $\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{u}_\delta^{(i)})$
<code>MatrixMultiplyMatrixFreeCoeff</code>	Calculate $\partial \mathbf{N} / \partial \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{q}$
<code>PreconCoeff</code>	Perform preconditioning

15.3 Data Structure of CompressibleFlowSolver

Figure 15.1 CompressibleFlowSolver DataStructure



15.4 Flow Chart of CompressibleFlowSolver

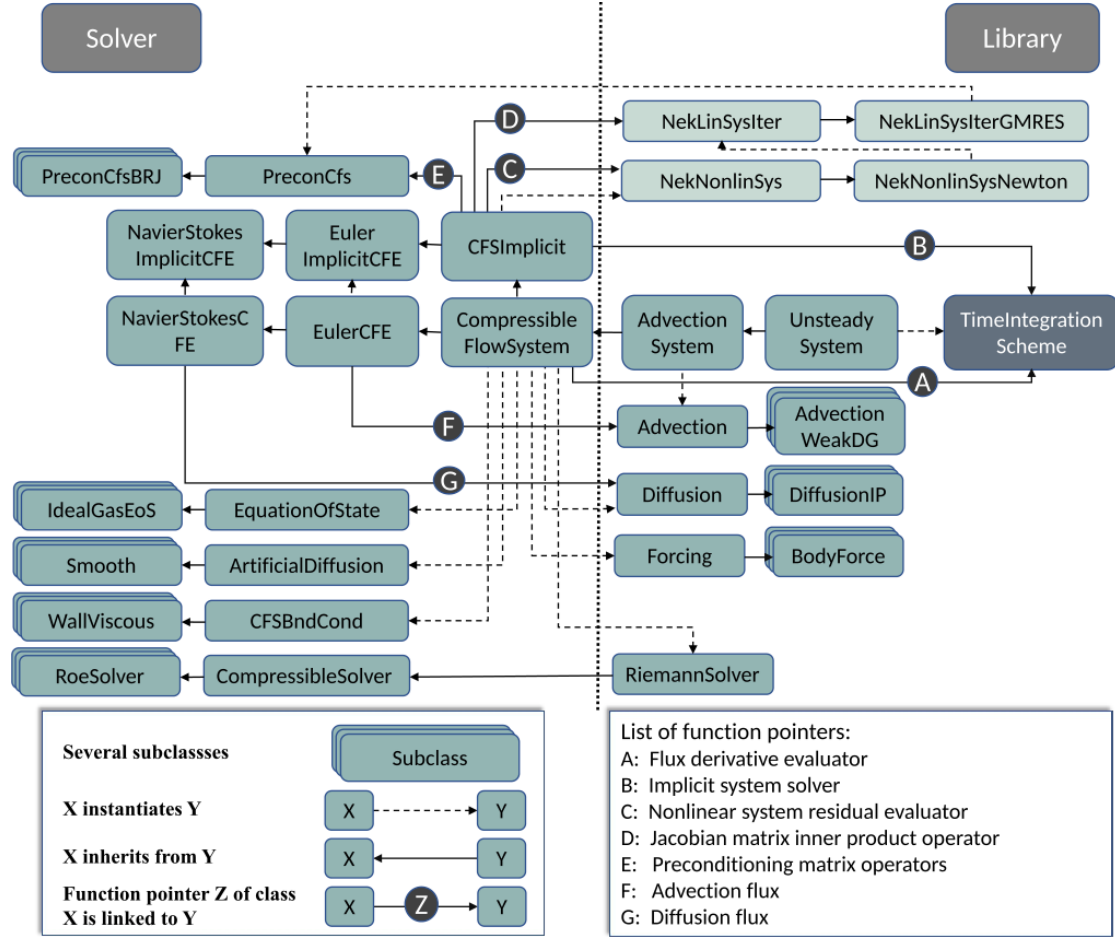


Figure 15.2 Class structure of the explicit and implicit solvers. The equation system classes (`EulerCFE` or `NavierStokesCFE`) contain access to the main functionalities of the solver, such as time integration, and the solution fields. They make use of numerical methods from the libraries, such as `AdvectionWeakDG`, and equations system related functions, such as the advection flux (`F`) and diffusion flux (`G`), to form the spatial discretization operator `A`. The spatial operator `A` and the time integration method form the explicit solver using the method of lines. For the implicit solver, additional classes like the Newton solver (`NekNonlinSysNewton`), GMRES solver (`NekLinSysIterGMRES`) and linear algebra solver of preconditioners (e.g. `PrecondCfsBRJ`) are instantiated. Together with operators related to the nonlinear system (`C`), the Jacobian matrix (`D`) and preconditioning matrix (`E`), an implicit system solver (`B`) is constructed, which is linked to the implicit time integration scheme to form the implicit solver.

The main procedures for building a solver are briefly introduced using the explicit solver of the NS equations as an example. Besides the main solver class (`CompressibleFlowSolver`) which controls the solving procedure, an equation system class is needed. The equation system classes (`EulerCFE` or `NavierStokesCFE`) are instantiated and initialized dynamically based on user inputs using a factory method pattern [?], which is also extensively used for the dynamic object creation of classes in the solver. The equation

system class inherits instantiations of classes related to geometry information, solution approximation, time integration and others from equations system classes in the libraries such as `UnsteadySystem` in `SolverUtils`. Thus the main functionality of the equation system class is to offer equation system related functions and to form spatial discretization operators using numerical methods from the libraries such as, `AdvectionWeakDG`. Fig. 15.2 illustrates the class structure of the explicit and implicit solvers. The equation of state (`EquationOfState`), boundary conditions (`CFSBndCond`), Riemann flux (`RiemmanSolver`), shock capturing method (`ArtificialDiffusion`), forcing term (`Forcing`), advection flux (function pointer `F`) and diffusion flux (function pointer `G`) are instantiated or implemented in the equation system class. Specific numerical schemes like the weak DG scheme for advection terms (`AdvectionWeakDG`) and the interior penalty method for diffusion terms (`DiffusionIP`) are instantiated to calculate $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}$ and $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{G}$ in Eq. (15.1) provided with all these equation system related functions (`F` and `G`). Finally the spatial discretization operator $L_\delta(\mathbf{u}, t)$ is linked to the time integration class using the pointer-to-function `A` and the explicit solver is complete.

The main simulation flowchart of the implicit solver is given in Tab. 15.2, which also shows the flow between different classes.

Table 15.2 Nassi-Shneiderman diagram of the implicit solver with the corresponding class names. Brown: library class ; cyan: solver class.

Initialization	in <code>CompressibleFlowSolver</code>
Time step loop n	in <code>UnsteadySystem</code>
Runge-Kutta loop $m = 1, \dots, M$	in <code>TimeIntegrationScheme</code>
Calculate source term $\mathbf{S}_m$	in <code>TimeIntegrationScheme</code>
Netwon iteration l	in <code>NewtonSolver</code>
Calculate residual $\mathbf{N}(\bar{\mathbf{u}}^l)$	in <code>CFSImplicit</code>
GMRES iteration k	in <code>NekLinSysIterGMRES</code>
Calculate search vector $\mathbf{q}_k$	in <code>NekLinSysIterGMRES</code>
BRJ iteration $j = 1, \dots, J$	in <code>PrecondBRJ</code>
Calculate $\hat{\mathbf{q}}^j = \hat{\mathbf{D}}^{-1}(\mathbf{q}_k - (\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{U}})\hat{\mathbf{q}}^{j-1})$	in <code>CFSImplicit</code>
Calculate $\partial \mathbf{N} / \partial \mathbf{u} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{q}}^J$	in <code>CFSImplicit</code>
Calculate linear system residual	in <code>NekLinSysIterGMRES</code>
Calculate $\bar{\mathbf{u}}^{l+1}$ by linear combination of $\mathbf{q}_k$	in <code>NekLinSysIterGMRES</code>
Calculate $\mathbf{u}^{n+1}$	in <code>TimeIntegrationScheme</code>
Output and finalization	in <code>CompressibleFlowSolver</code>

Part III

Utilities

In this part of the developer's guide, we walk you through development aspects of the various utilities that are available within publicly-available *Nektar++* repository. We encourage you to incorporate these utilities into your science and engineering work flows. If you find that the current utilities do not meet your needs and consequently you end up building a new utility based upon our framework, we encourage you to consider submitting this to us for incorporation in the publicly-available master branch.

FieldConvert

The broad purpose of the FieldConvert utility is to read in data from a file, perform some operation on this data, and write the data resulting from this operation to an output file. To illustrate how it does this, let us consider a case in which the user wishes to calculate the wall shear stress on the boundary labelled "0", given a session file `session.xml` and field file `field.fld`, and write it to field file `field_wss.fld` at 10 equispaced points using the `output-points` option ¹

```
FieldConvert -n 10 -m wss:bnd=0 session.xml field.fld field_wss.fld
```

The first task is to determine how to proceed based on the user input on the command line. In this case, each command line input apart from `-n 10` corresponds to a module. The program stores these inputs as a `boost::program_options::variables_map` object, in which each input is the key and its corresponding argument (if it has one) is the value. The key is a `std::string`, and the value is optional, and can be any type.

The names of process modules are specified using the flag `--module` or `-m`, and these are stored in the map using the key "module" and the value being whatever follows the flag, in this case the "wss:bnd=0". The file names, corresponding to input and output modules, are so-called *hidden options*, meaning they don't require a flag. These are stored in the map using the key "input-file", with the value being a `std::vector` consisting of the filenames, in this case "session.xml", "field.fld", and "field_wss.fld". The `output-points` option is stored in the map using the key `output-points` and the value being 10.

Assuming the user did not specify the command line options `help`, `modules-list`, or `modules-opt`, the program proceeds with its main functionality and a `FieldSharedPtr` is constructed. The values in the map corresponding with the `module` and `input-file` keys are stored as a `std::vector` of `std::strings` called the *module commands*, with the values corresponding to input modules at the start, process modules in the middle,

¹The output file would actually be `field_wss_b0.fld`.

and output modules at the end. Note that the program assumes that all these files apart from the last are input files, unless specified by the prefix `out` on the command line, e.g. `out:file.fld`.

The module commands are iterated over, and for each entry, the module string is identified and stored with the module type in a `ModuleKey`. For input modules, the module string is identified using `InputModule::GuessFormat()`, or failing that, by taking the name of the file extension, as is done for output modules. For process modules, the module string is simply the name of the entry (up to the colon separator if there is one). The `ModuleKey` is used to create a `ModuleSharedPtr` using the factory by calling `Module::GetModuleFactory().CreateInstance`, passing the `ModuleKey` and the `FieldSharedPtr` as arguments. This `ModuleSharedPtr` is appended to a `std::vector` of `ModuleSharedPtrs`. For input modules, `InputModule::AddFile` is called with the module string and the input file name passed as arguments. The configuration options are then parsed and registered using `Module::RegisterConfig()`, with arguments being the option name and its value (if it is boolean, the argument is just the option name). For input and output modules, the option `infile` or `outfile` is passed, along with the input or output file name. To complete the loop, the `Module::SetDefaults` function is called. The process of constructing a module, registering the configuration options (as well as calling `AddFile` for `InputModules`), and setting the default configuration options for those that were not set is summarised as *setting up* the module. The processes involved in the set up of input, process, and output modules are shown in figure ?? . In this case, instances of the `InputXml`, `InputFld`, `ProcessWSS`, and `OutputFld` classes are constructed. The configuration option name for `InputXml` and `InputFld` is the string `infile` and the values are the filenames `session.xml` and `field.fld` respectively. The option for `ProcessWSS` is `bn` with value 0, and the option name for `OutputFld` is the string `outfile` with the value being the filename `field_wss.fld`. Then, a `ModuleSharedPtr` is created for the `ProcessEquispacedOutput` module if it is needed.² The `CheckModules` function (defined `FieldConvert.cpp`) is called with the `std::vector` of `ModuleSharedPtrs` as argument in order to check the modules that have been set up are compatible. Finally, the `RunModule` function (defined in `FieldConvert.cpp`) is called with each `ModuleSharedPtr` as argument in order of priority, which essentially calls the `Process` function as for each module, operating on the various member variables of `Field`, with the map used to store the command line arguments passed to each. When using the `nparts` command line argument, the calling of `RunModule` is done in a loop over the number of partitions. On each iteration, `Field::ClearField` is called, and a new `Comm` object is generated called `partComm` using the current partition number, with the original saved as `defComm`. `Field's m_comm` is switched to `partComm` when running `InputXml` or any output module, and kept as `defComm` otherwise.

A diagram of the process is shown in figure ?? . It shows the order in which the modules are set up and run, and what member variables of `Field` each updates. The key for the diagrams in this section is shown in figure ?? .

²This module is needed for certain combinations of modules

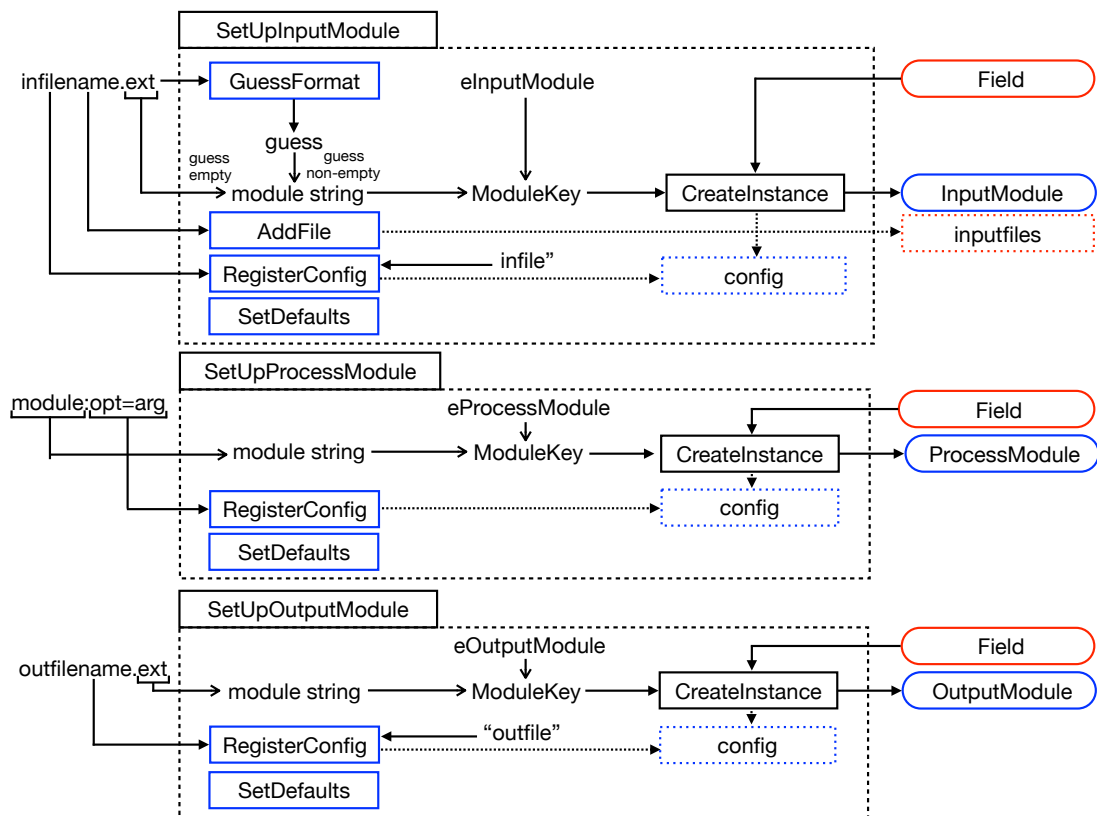


Figure 16.1 Setting up modules

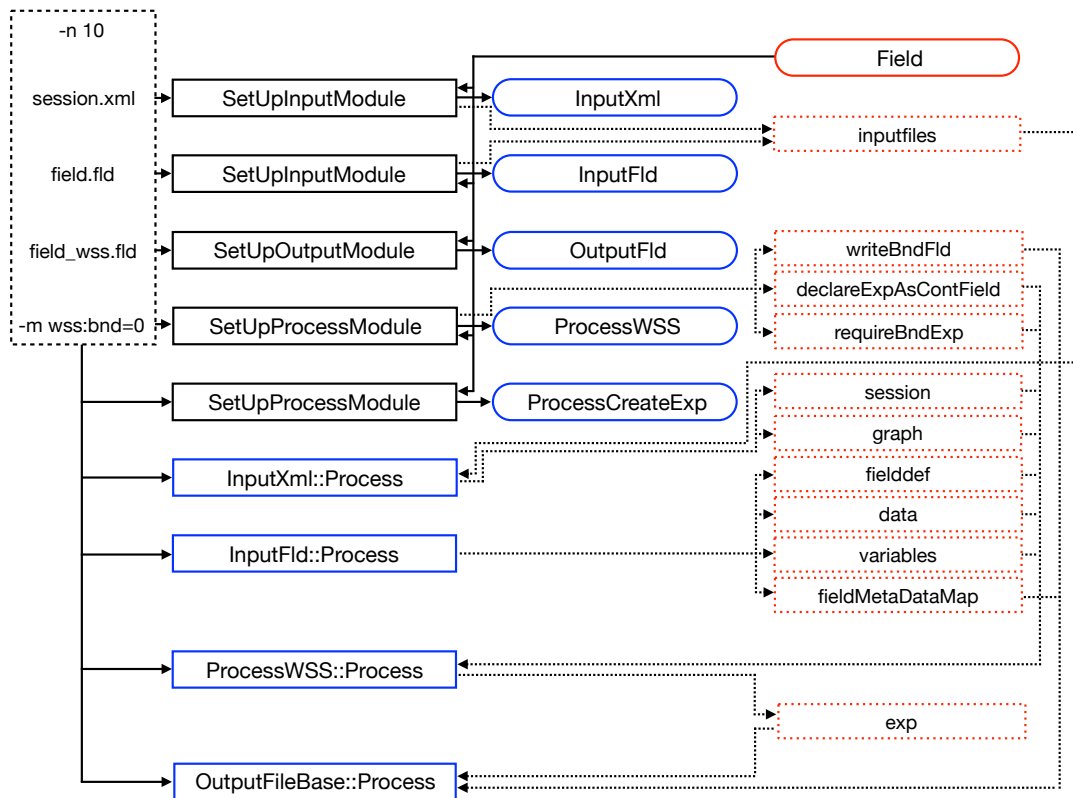


Figure 16.2 A diagram showing how FieldConvert performs a task

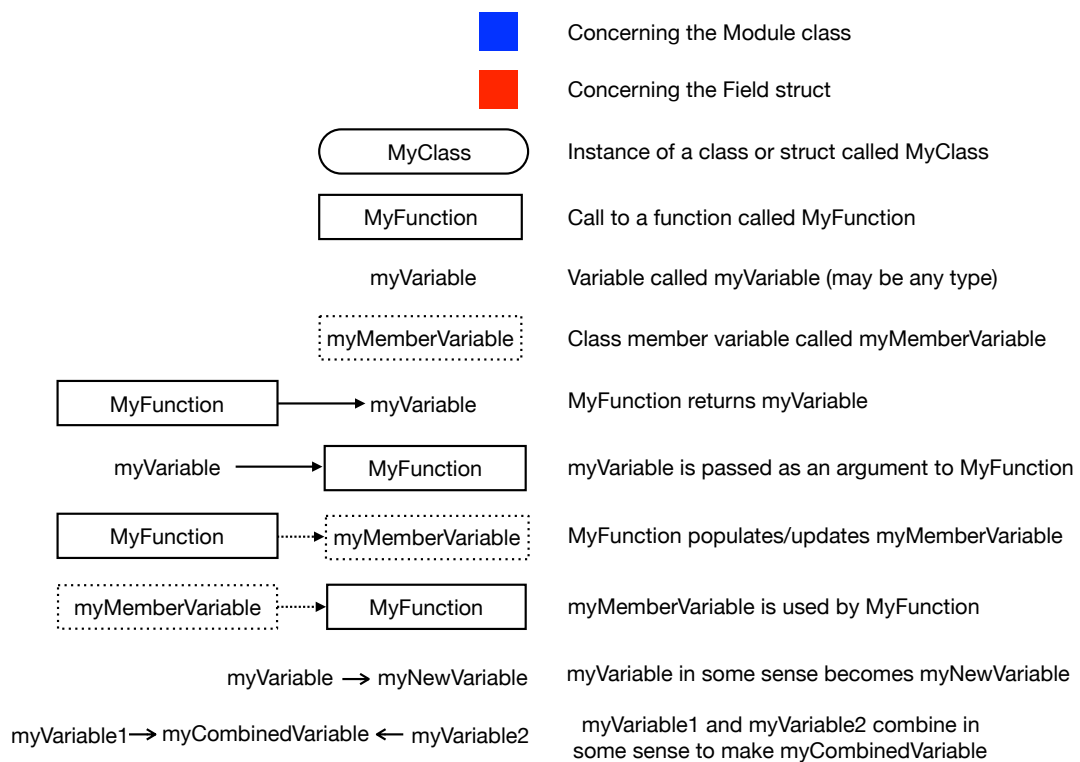


Figure 16.3 Key for the diagrams in this section

NekMesh

17.1 Introduction

NekMesh is described in its paper [1] as "an open-source mesh generation package which is designed to enable the generation of valid, high-quality curvilinear meshes of complex, three-dimensional geometries for performing high-order simulations." To summarise, NekMesh is comprised of various Input, Process and Output modules, and the workflow is to run 1) one input module 2) n process modules 3) one output module. Before learning about the three module types, we need a good understanding of the theory underpinning the NekMesh format.

17.2 Theory

17.2.1 Mesh Hierarchy

The most fundamental thing we need to understand is how meshes are stored. The hierarchy of components that form a mesh is given in fig. 17.1

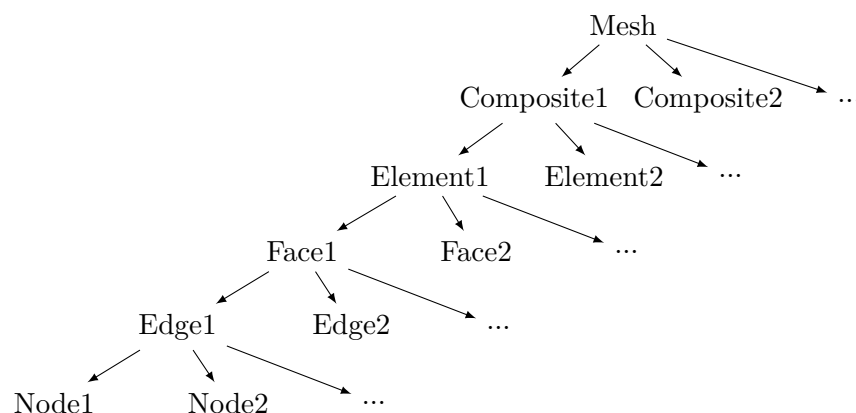


Figure 17.1

Mesheres have a **dimensionality** of their own (eg. for a surface mesh `expDim = 2`, for a volume mesh `expDim = 3`), and exist in n -dimensional physical space (`physDim`, where $\text{physDim} \geq \text{expDim}$). **Composites** are collections of elements. For elements which have the same dimensionality as the physical space they are in, they are grouped by their type. **Note:** boundary tri and quad elements are all grouped into a singular composite. **Boundary element** are elements that form the boundary of a mesh area/volume. These are one dimension lower than the physical dimension (eg. in 3D space, mesh volumes have boundary *surfaces*).

17.2.2 Vertex node ordering rules

Collapsed points

NekMesh supports quadrilateral (quad) and triangular (tri) 2D elements, and tetrahedral (tet), prism, pyramid (pyra) and hexahedral (hex) 3D element. Elements with tri faces (all except quads and hexes) use a collapsed coordinate systems (fig. 17.2b) [2], a feature which introduces constraints when assembling and connecting 3D elements.

In the code, we indicate which node in a tri face is the collapsed point by giving it the highest node id (in `InputCGNS.cpp` and `InputStar.cpp` the node ordering is done in the function `ResetNodes`). Note that the relative ordering between nodes in *different faces* (even if in the same element) has no affect.

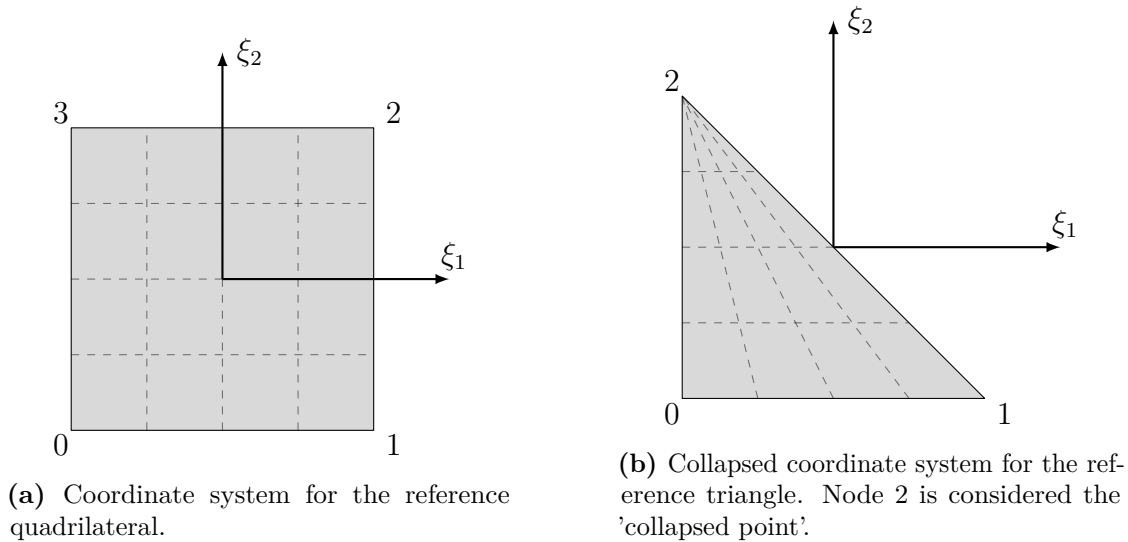
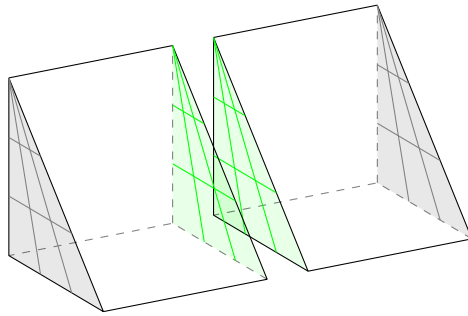


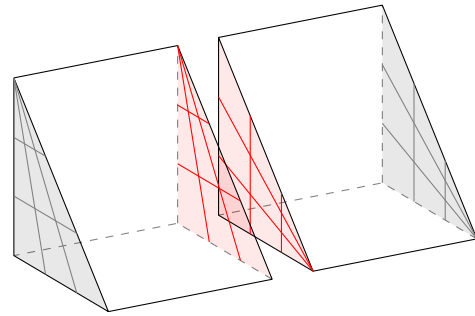
Figure 17.2 Coordinate systems for 2D elements/faces.

Tri interface rule

This rule simply states that when tri faces on two elements meet, the collapsed point must be the same for each tri (fig. 17.3).



(a) Valid element: neighbouring tri faces are aligned

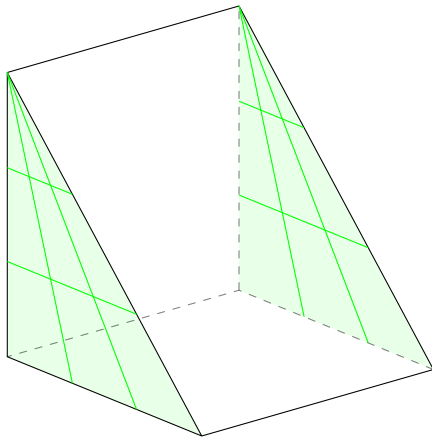


(b) Invalid element: neighbouring tri faces are misaligned

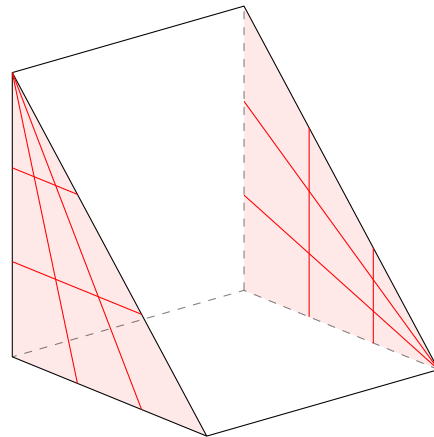
Figure 17.3 Tri interface rule

Prism rule

For prism elements, the collapsed point on both the tri faces must correspond (ie. there must be an edge joining them) (fig. 17.4). Combining this with rule 1., we see that in a prism line (line of prisms joined by their tri faces), they all must be oriented in the same way.



(a) Valid element: two tri faces are aligned



(b) Invalid element: two tri faces are misaligned

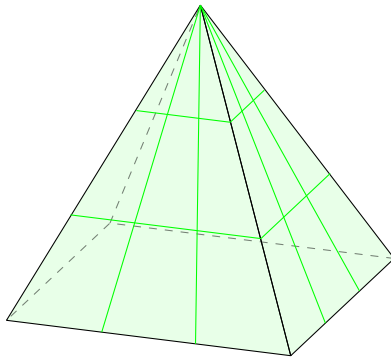
Figure 17.4 Prism rule

Pyramid rule

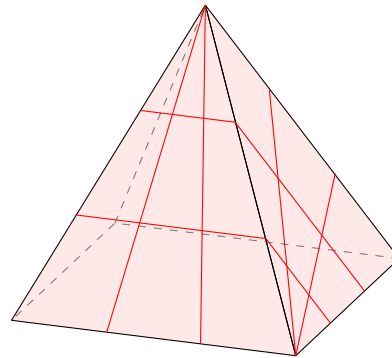
In a pyramid element, the collapsed point on all four tri faces must be at the apex of the pyramid (fig. 17.5).

Tet and Hex elements

Tet and hex elements 17.6 are more flexible in their orientation due to their symmetry (and lack of tri faces in the case of hexes), so don't introduce any additional rules.

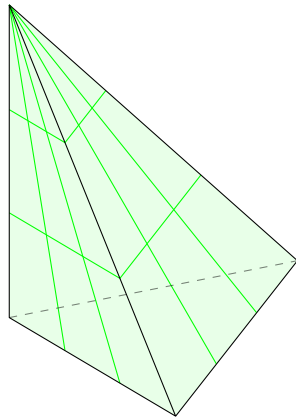


(a) Valid element: collapsed points at the apex for all tri faces

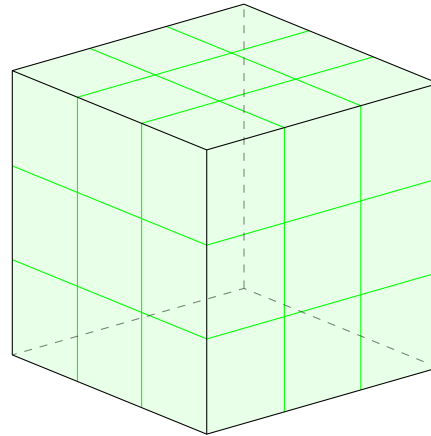


(b) Invalid element: collapsed points not at the apex for all tri faces

Figure 17.5 Pyramid rule



(a)



(b)

Figure 17.6 Hex and tet elements...

Impossible meshes

When we combine the three rules simultaneously, there are a few mesh cases which are impossible to mesh [17.7](#), but it is considered the responsibility of the mesh generator to avoid these. Therefore NekMesh deals with meshes that *are* possible *and* are likely to be produced by a CFD mesh generator.

Since pyramid elements are the cause of these impossible meshes, one method used to rectify problematic pyramids is to use *pyramid shielding* (fig. [17.8](#)). The idea is to replace any problematic pyramid with a smaller pyramid, plus four tets *shielding* the triangular pyramid faces from any neighbouring pyramid or prism elements. This decouples the pyramid's apex from neighbouring elements, due to the aforementioned flexibility of tets.

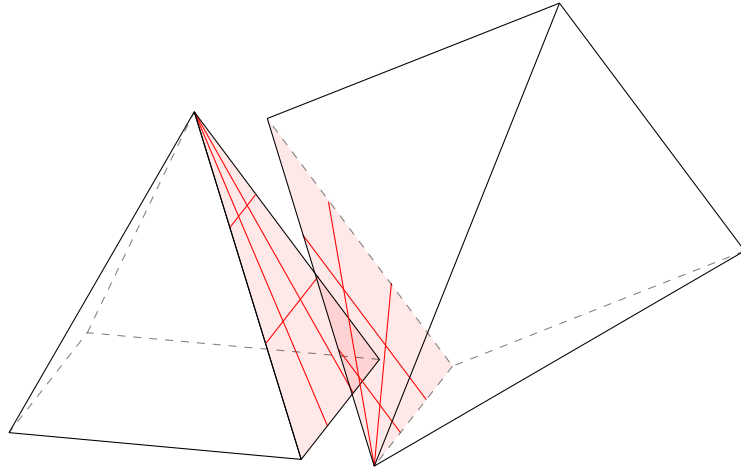


Figure 17.7

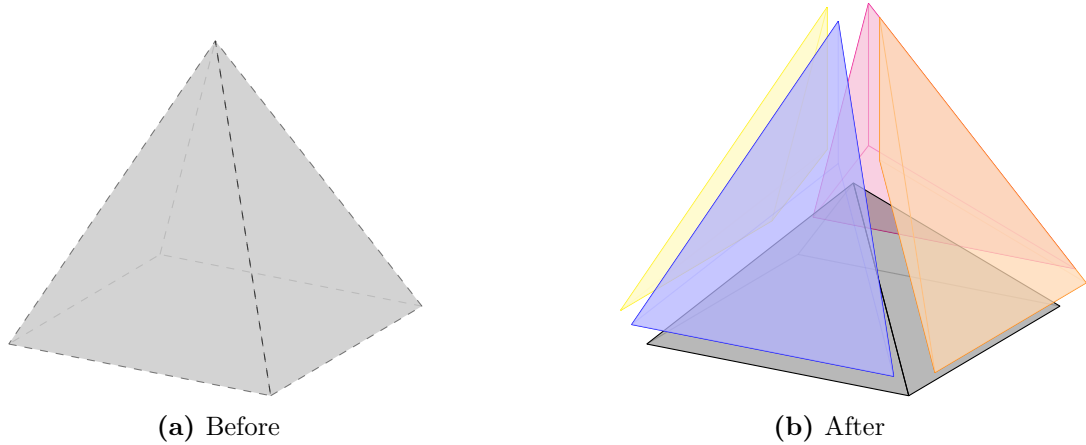


Figure 17.8 Before and after of the process of pyramid shielding. The pyra no longer restricts the orientation of neighbouring elements, so the impossible cases are avoided.

Implementation

Assuming we are given a valid mesh, we now need an algorithm (see alg. 1) to order the nodes to define the orientation of the elements in accordance with the three rules. In `InputCGNS.cpp` and `InputStar.cpp`, this is implemented as the function `ResetNodes`.

Let's work through a simple example implementation. Say we are given the test mesh in fig 17.9; it contains 6 elements (2 pyras and 4 prisms) and 14 nodes. We must assign each of the nodes a unique ID (0-13), compatible with the three rules.

1. Label the apex of the first pyra (0) with the highest available ID (13).
2. Pyra 0 shares a tri face with prism 2, so we must ID the corresponding node (12)

- on the opposite face of prism 2.
3. We move to the next pyra (1) and assert that of all the ID'd nodes, the apex has the highest ID (true, since only the apex has been ID'd).
 4. With the pyramids correctly oriented, we move to the *untouched* prisms (3, 4, 5), which all form a prism line. We arbitrarily assign the line of nodes labelled 11-8-5-2 as *the* line of collapsed points and ensure that the points along this line have the highest ID on their respective tri faces.
 5. We have now labelled all the nodes, but if any were yet unlabelled, we would give them the remaining IDs (from low to high).

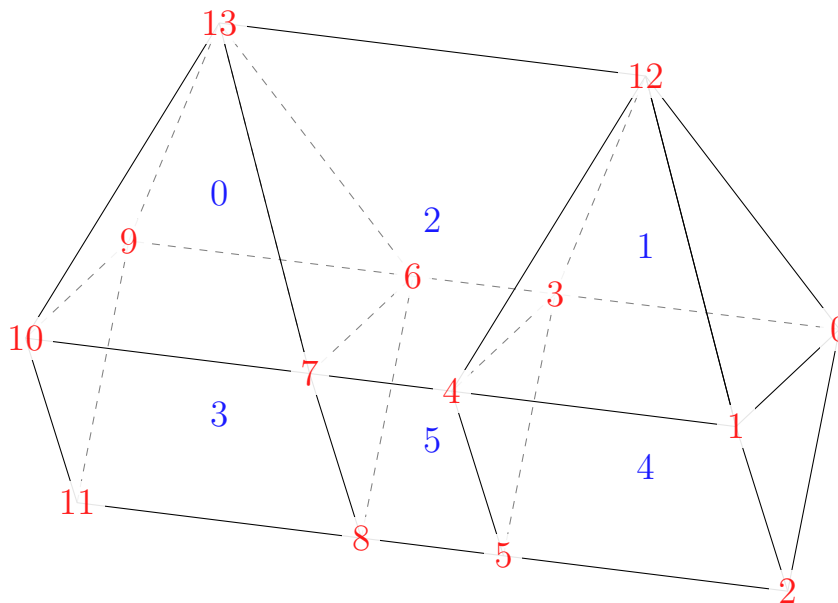


Figure 17.9 Node ordering determined by `ResetNodes` algorithm. Element IDs (already given): blue, node IDs: red.

17.2.3 Higher-order node ordering rules

As well as the order of the global node IDs, we also need to take care with the ordering of higher order nodes when creating elements, since the NekMesh convention is different from other formats (namely `.gmsh` and `.cgns`). Shown in figure 17.10, we can see that the method for ordering quad and tri nodes is the same: primary nodes (in black) are always included (clockwise), followed by mid-edge nodes (in red) for *all* higher order elements (also clockwise). Mid-face nodes (in blue) are optional, but if included they are next (ordered row-by-row).

Using the edge and face definitions in fig 17.11, we can derive the node ordering for higher order 3D elements too. As in the 2D case, it is a concatenation of the vertices, then all

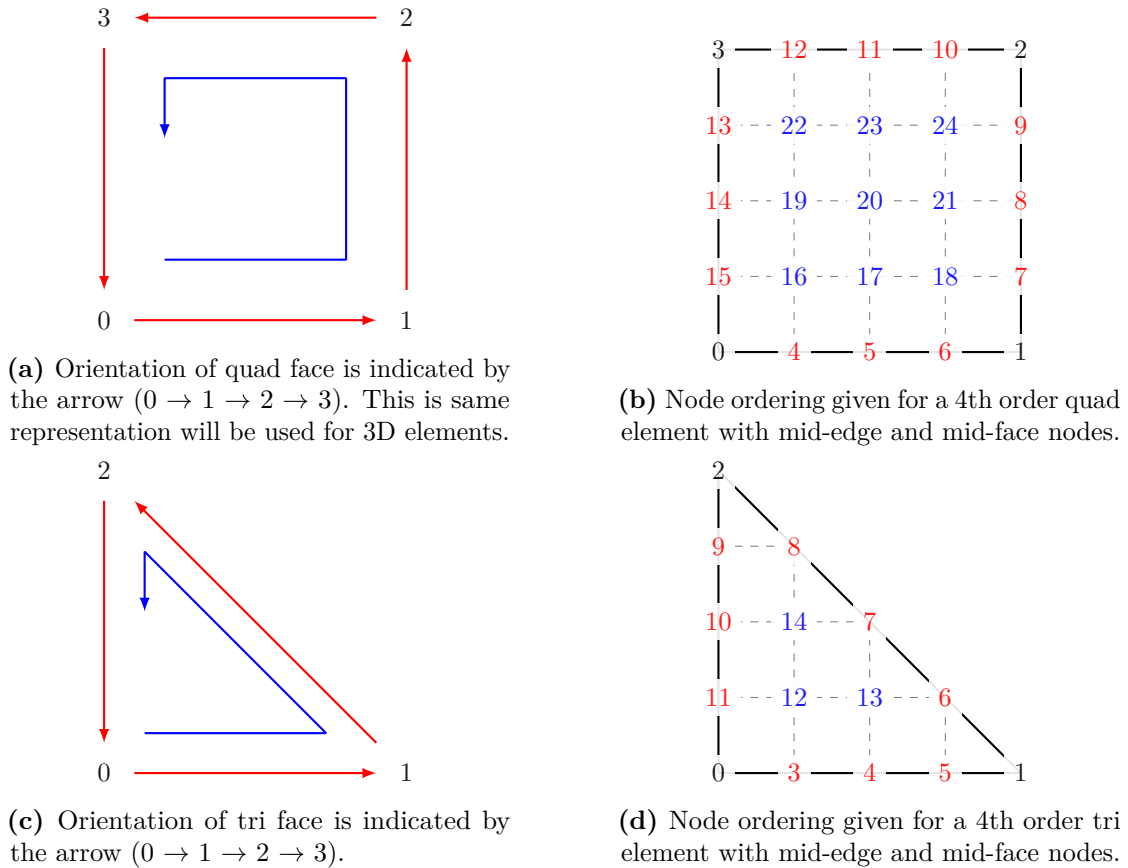


Figure 17.10 Node ordering rules for higher order quad and tri elements

the mid-edge nodes, then all the mid-face nodes (if included) then all the mid-volume nodes (if included).

Mid-volume nodes are ordered in a similar fashion to mid-face nodes. They are given slice-by-slice, parallel to and moving away from face 0, and with the orientation dictated by face 0. This is most easily seen in the example given in fig. 17.12. For pyra and prisms, the slices are still quads, but with the size of/number of nodes in each slice decreasing away from face 0. For tets, the slices are triangular and with decreasing size.

17.3 Input Modules

As well as being able to generate meshes in NekMesh, we seek to make NekMesh compatible with multiple commonly-used file formats, enabling users to create meshes in their chosen mesh generation software, before either elevating their order in NekMesh or using it as is. Some file formats provide an API for reading from (and writing to) them; this includes .ccm with CCMIO and .cgns with CGNS Mid-Level Library. Other formats such as .gmsh do not, so we must manually read the file with `stringstream`. Once the required information (such as node coordinates, elements nodes, boundary conditions

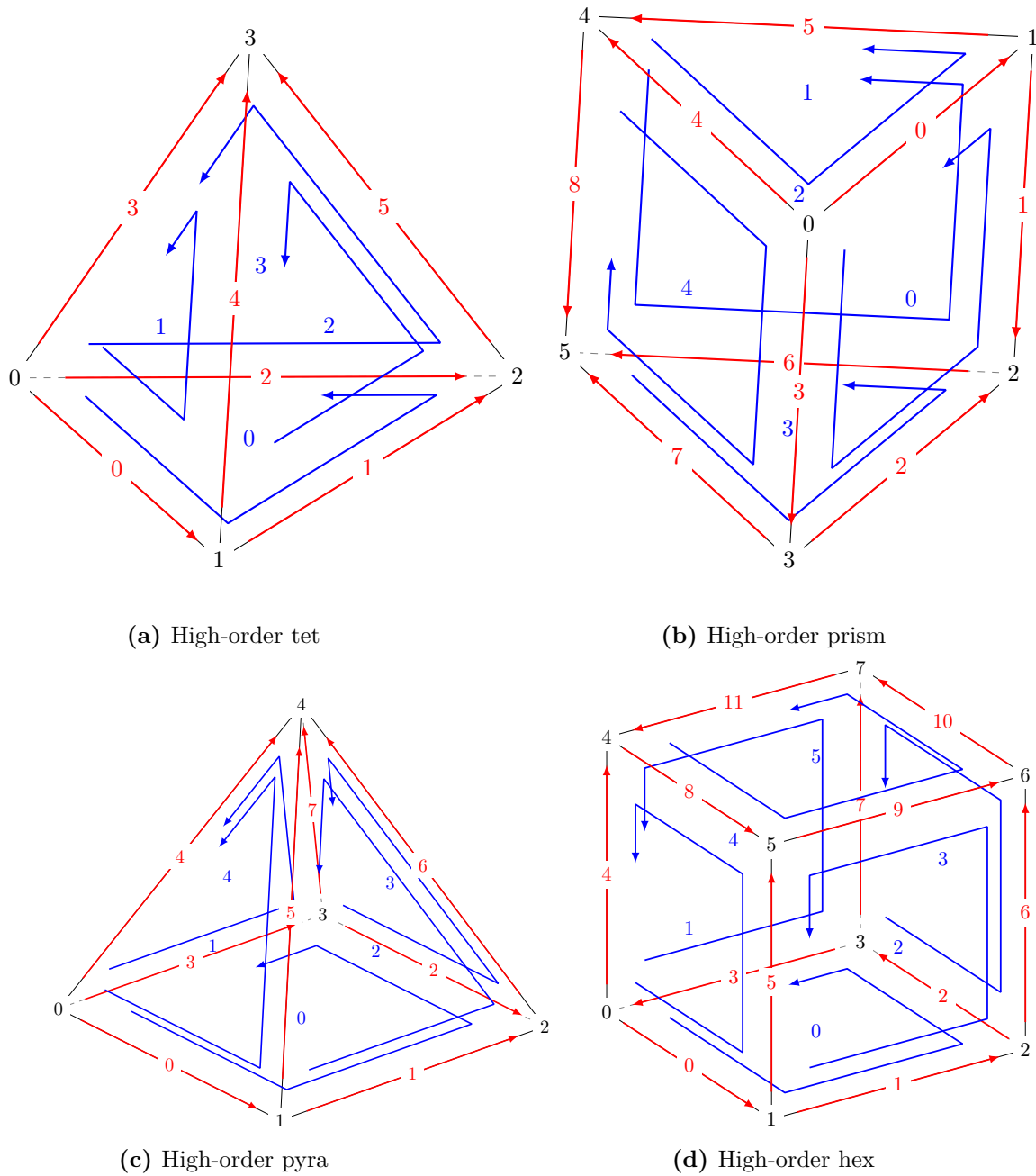


Figure 17.11 Node ordering rules for higher order 3D elements elements

etc.) has been read from the file, however, the process is the same:

1. For each node we must first create a node shared pointer (`NodeSharedPtr`) append it to `m_node` and insert it into `vertexSet` eg.

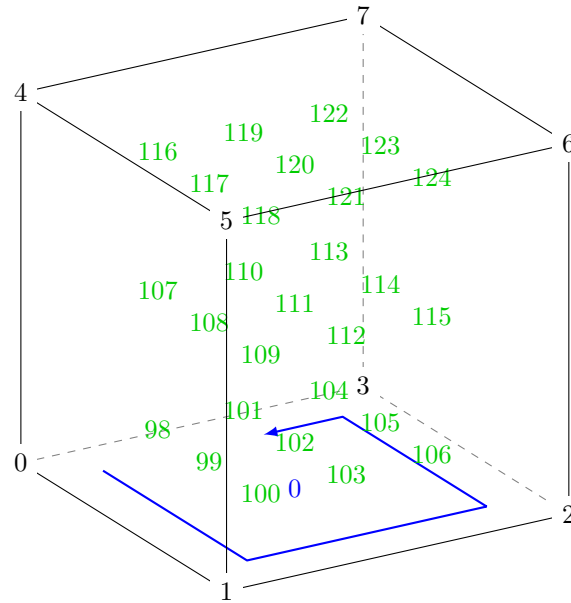


Figure 17.12 Volume node ordering for a 4th order hex element

```

1 NodeSharedPtr newNode = std::make_shared<Node>(id, x, y, z);
2 m_mesh->m_node.push_back(newNode);
3 m_mesh->m_vertexSet.insert(newNode);

```

...ensuring that the node IDs all comply with the Prism and Pyramid rules (section 17.2.2).

2. We must then append an `ElementSharedPtr` for each element (internal *and* boundary), eg.

```

1 ElementSharedPtr E = GetElementFactory().CreateInstance(elType,
    conf,
2 nodeList, tags); m_mesh->m_element[E->GetDim()].push_back(E);

```

3. Once the elements and nodes have been correctly created, the following functions are called sequentially to process this information into the NekMesh format.

```

1 ProcessEdges();
2 ProcessFaces();
3 ProcessElements();
4 ProcessComposites();

```

17.3.1 StarCCM+ .ccm input (InputStar.cpp)

17.3.2 Gmsh .msh input (InputGmsh.cpp)

17.3.3 CGNS .cgns input (InputCGNS.cpp)

Information about the CGNS Standard Interface Data Structure (SIDS) can be found at https://cgns.github.io/CGNS_docs_current/sids. This converter makes use of the CGNS Mid-Level Library and information about that can be found at https://cgns.github.io/CGNS_docs_current/midlevel. We will summarise the key points about the CGNS standard.

Every file will contain at least one zone, which contains information about coordinates and the mesh. Each zone contains at least one base, which contain information about the information about the dimensionality of the domain (fig. ??).

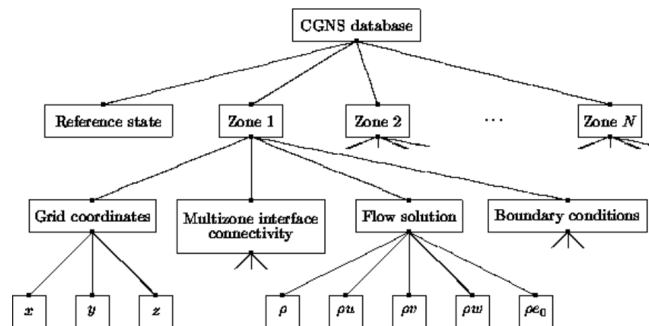


Figure 17.13 CGNS database hierarchy. Image from cgns.github.io

Elements are stored in sections where they are grouped by element type in the case of SEPARATED CGNS files or all the elements are grouped together in the case of a MIXED CGNS file. Depending on the file format, the `InputCGNS.cpp` either uses `ExtractMixedElemInfo()` or `ExtractSeparatedElemInfo()`. In both case, an array `ElementConnectivity` is read in, containing the node IDs for each element (in the MIXED format the element type must also be specified for each element). Each function takes the `ElementConnectivity` array and generates a vector `elemInfo` which contains the type and node list for each element.

The function `ReadFaces` converts from `elemInfo` into a face representation, where each element is defined by its face (`ElementFaces`), each face is defined by its nodes (`FaceNodes`), and the boundary element faces of the mesh are stored in `BndElementFaces`. These three variables are required for the next function `ResetNodes` and allows us to re-use a large section of code from the `InputStar` converter.

The final step that must be mentioned is the fact that CGNS and NekMesh use different conventions for the order in which to list higher order nodes. In the functions

`GenElement2D` and `GenElement3D`, we must use mappings generated by `CGNSReordering` to map between the different conventions. Although these could be produced algorithmically (and one would want to if CGNS supported orders higher than 4th), for the moment they have been hard-coded in by manually comparing the node orderings in the CGNS SIDS [3] and NekMesh 17.2.3.

17.4 Process Modules

17.5 Output Modules


```

nodeID  $\leftarrow$  0 ;                               /* stores the lowest available ID
revNodeID  $\leftarrow$  numNodes - 1 ;               /* stores the highest available ID
/* assign the apex node as the collapsed point and set the
   orientation of any prism lines that are connected to a pyramid tri
   face
foreach pyramid : pyramids do
  /* give the apex node the highest available ID
  apex node  $\leftarrow$  revNodeID;
  revNodeID  $\leftarrow$  revNodeID - 1;
  foreach tri : pyramid tri faces do
    if tri is shared with another pyramid then
      | assert: other pyramid shares the same apex node;
    end
    else if tri is shared with a prism then
      | define the prism line;
      | /* traverse the prism line, recursively assigning the highest
      |    available ID to the corresponding node
    end
    else
      | /* it is either shared with a tet or ends in free space
      |    continue;
    end
  end
end
/* set the orientation of the remaining prisms
foreach prism : prisms do
  if any nodes have ID then
    | /* this prism has already been dealt with
    |    continue;
  end
  create a list of the prisms in the prism line;
  define the prism line;
end
/* give the remaining nodes an ID (low to high)
foreach node : nodes do
  if node has ID then
    | continue;
  end
  /* Give node the lowest available ID
  node  $\leftarrow$  nodeID;
  nodeID  $\leftarrow$  nodeID + 1;
end

```

Algorithm 1: Setting ordering of node IDs in mesh

Bibliography

- [1] NekMesh: An open-source high-order mesh generation framework
- [2] George Karniadakis, Spencer Sherwin, *Spectral/hp Element Methods for Computational Fluid Dynamics*
- [3] https://cgns.github.io/CGNS_docs_current/sids/conv.html#unstructgrid

Part IV

NekPy: Python interface to *Nektar++*

Introduction

This part of the guide contains the information on using and developing NekPy Python wrappers for the *Nektar++* spectral/*hp* element framework. *As a disclaimer, these wrappings are experimental and incomplete.* You should not rely on their current structure and API remaining unchanged.

Currently, representative classes from the `LibUtilities`, `StdRegions`, `SpatialDomains`, `LocalRegions` and `MultiRegions` libraries have been wrapped in order to show the proof-of-concept.

18.1 Features and functionality

NekPy uses the `pybind11` library to provide a set of high-quality, hand-written Python bindings for selected functions and classes in Nektar++.

It is worth noting that Python (CPython, the standard Python implementation written in C, in particular) includes C API and that everything in Python is strictly speaking a C structure called `PyObject`. Hence, defining a new class, method etc. in Python is in reality creating a new `PyObject` structure.

‘`pybind11`’ is essentially a wrapper for Python C API which conveniently exports C++ classes and methods into `PyObject` objects. At compilation time a dynamic library is created which is then imported to Python, as shown in Figure ??.

A typical snippet could look something like:

Listing 18.1 NekPy sample snippet

```
1 from NekPy.LibUtilities import PointsKey, PointsType, BasisKey, BasisType
2 from NekPy.StdRegions import StdQuadExp
3 import numpy as np
4 numModes = 8
5 numPts   = 9
6 ptsKey   = PointsKey(numPts, PointsType.GaussLobattoLegendre)
```

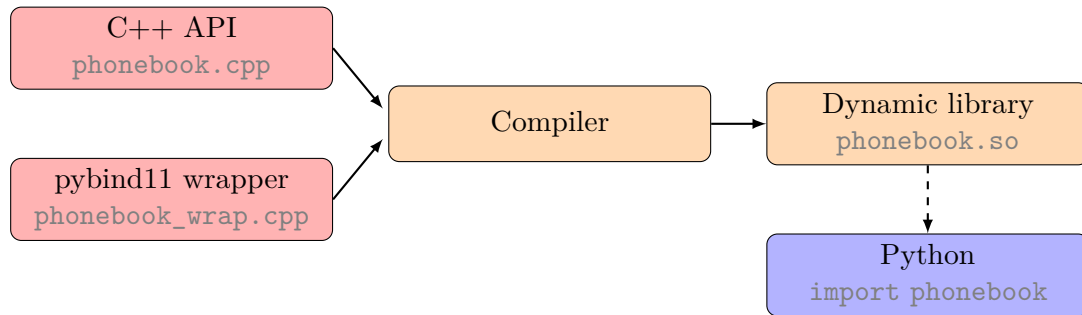


Figure 18.1 A schematic diagram of how C++ code is converted into Python with Boost.Python [51]

```

7 basisKey = BasisKey(BasisType.Modified_A, numModes, ptsKey)
8 quadExp  = StdQuadExp(basisKey, basisKey)
9 x, y     = quadExp.GetCoords()
10 fx      = np.sin(x) * np.cos(y)
11 proj    = quadExp.FwdTrans(fx)

```

NekPy uses `numpy` to automatically convert C++ `Array<OneD, >` objects to and from the commonly-used `numpy.ndarray` object, which makes the integration more seamless between Python and C++.

Installing NekPy

NekPy has the following list of requirements:

- Python 3.5+
- NumPy

Most of these can be installed using package managers on various operating systems, as we describe below. We also have a requirement on the `pybind11` package; however, this will be automatically be downloaded and compiled as part of the compilation process.

19.1 Compiling and installing Nektar++

Nektar++ should be compiled as per the user guide instructions and installed into a directory which we will refer to as `$NEKDIR`. By default this is the `dist` directory inside the Nektar++ build directory.

Note that Nektar++ must, at a minimum, be compiled with `NEKTAR_BUILD_LIBRARY`, `NEKTAR_BUILD_UTILITIES`, `NEKTAR_BUILD_SOLVERS` and `NEKTAR_BUILD_PYTHON`. This will automatically download and install `pybind11`. Note that all solvers may be disabled as long as the `NEKTAR_BUILD_SOLVERS` option is set.

19.1.1 macOS

Homebrew

Users of Homebrew should make sure their installation is up-to-date with `brew upgrade`. Then run

```
1 brew install python
```

To install the NumPy package, use the `pip` package manager:

```
1 pip install numpy
```

MacPorts

Users of MacPorts should sure their installation is up-to-date with `sudo port selfupdate` && `sudo port upgrade outdated`. Then run

```
1 sudo port install python310 py310-numpy
2 sudo port select --set python python310
```

19.1.2 Linux: Ubuntu/Debian

Users of Debian and Ubuntu Linux systems should sure their installation is up-to-date with `sudo apt-get update` && `sudo apt-get upgrade`

```
1 sudo apt-get install libpython-dev python-numpy
```

19.1.3 Compiling the wrappers

Run the following command in `$NEKDIR/build` directory to install the Python package for the current user:

```
1 make nekpy-install-user
```

Alternatively, the following command can be used to install the package for all users:

```
1 make nekpy-install-system
```

19.2 Using the bindings

By default, the bindings will install into the `dist` directory, along with a number of examples that are stored in the `$NEKDIR/library/Demos/Python` directory. To test your installation, you can for example run one of these (e.g. `python Basis.py`) or launch an interactive session:

```
1 $ cd builds
2 $ python
3 Python 2.7.13 (default, Apr  4 2017, 08:47:57)
4 [GCC 4.2.1 Compatible Apple LLVM 8.1.0 (clang-802.0.38)] on darwin
5 Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
6 >>> from NekPy.LibUtilities import PointsKey, PointsType
7 >>> PointsKey(10, PointsType.GaussLobattoLegendre)
8 <NekPy.LibUtilities._LibUtilities.PointsKey object at 0x11005c310>
```

19.2.1 Examples

A number of examples of the wrappers can be found in the `$NEKDIR/library/Demos/Python` directory, along with a sample mesh `newsquare_2x2.xml`:

- `SessionReader.py` is the simplest example and shows how to construct a session reader object. Run it as `python SessionReader.py mesh.xml`.
- `Basis.py` shows functionality of basic `LibUtilities` points and basis classes. Run this as `python Basis.py`.
- `StdProject.py` shows how to use some of the `StdRegions` wrappers and duplicates the functionality of `Basis.py` using the `StdExpansion` class. Run this as `python StdProject.py`.
- `MeshGraph.py` loads a mesh and prints out some basic properties of its quadrilateral elements. Run it as `python MeshGraph.py newsquare_2x2.xml`.

If you want to modify the source files, it's advisable to edit them in the `$NEKDIR/library/Demos/Python` directory and re-run `make install`, otherwise local changes will be overwritten by the next `make install`.

Package structure

The NekPy wrapper is designed to mimic the library structure of Nektar++, with directories for the `LibUtilities`, `SpatialDomains` and `StdRegions` libraries. This is a deliberate design decision, so that classes and definitions in Nektar++ can be easily located inside NekPy.

There are also some other directories and files:

- `LibUtilities/Python/NekPyConfig.hpp` is a convenience header that all `.cpp` files should import. It sets appropriate namespaces and defines commonly used macros.
- `cmake/python` contains templates for `init.py` and `setup.py` files which every Python package should contain,
- `cmake/ThirdPartyPython.cmake` is a CMake configuration file which searches for Python and prepares `make` targets for installing NekPy.

Figure 20.1 shows the location of Python wrapper files within Nektar++ structure. Every sub-module of Nektar++ hosts an additional folder for Python files and the structure of the Python folder mimics the structure of the sub-module itself, as shown on the left of the figure with `LibUtilities` sub-module. Individual `.cpp` files, such as `Expansion.cpp` contain the wrappers for classes and methods from corresponding Nektar++ library files whereas `.cpp` files named after sub-modules (e.g. `LibUtilities.cpp`) contain `PYBIND11_MODULE` definitions which create package modules (e.g. `NekPy.LibUtilities`).

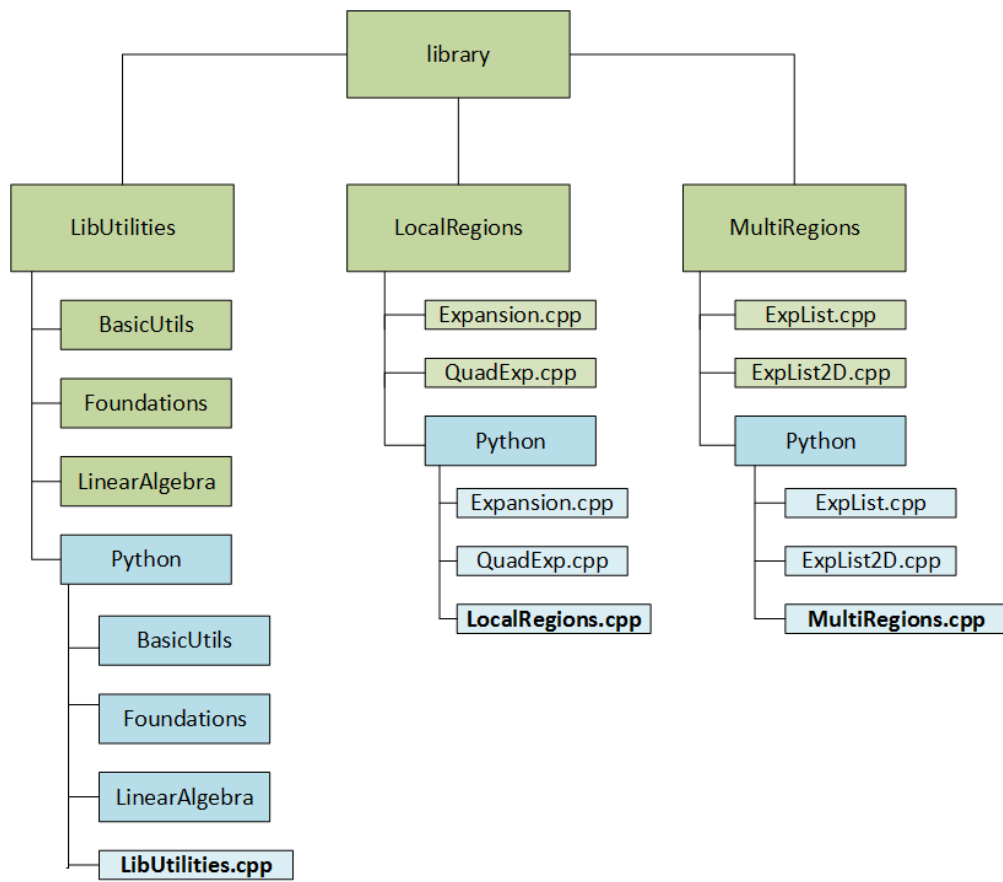


Figure 20.1 The location of Python wrapper files within Nektar++ structure.

NekPy wrapping guide

This section attempts to outline some of the basic principles of the NekPy wrapper, which relies entirely on the excellent `pybind11` library. An extensive documentation is therefore beyond the scope of this document, but we highlight aspects that are important for the NekPy wrappers.

In general, note that when things go wrong with `pybind11`, it'll be indicated either by an extensive compiler error, or a runtime error in the Python interpreter when you try to use your wrapper. Judicious use of Google is therefore recommended to track down these issues!

You may also find the following resources useful:

- [The `pybind11` tutorial](#);
- [The `pybind11` documentation](#).

To demonstrate how to wrap classes, we'll refer to a number of existing parts of the code below.

21.1 Defining a library

First consider `LibUtilities`. An abbreviated version of the base file, `LibUtilities.cpp` has the following structure:

Listing 21.1 Defining a library with `pybind11`

```
1 #include <LibUtilities/Python/NekPyConfig.hpp>
2
3 void export_Basis(py::module &);
4 void export_SessionReader(py::module &);
5
6 // Define the LibUtilities module within the pybind11 module 'm'.
```

```

7 PYBIND11_MODULE(_LibUtilities, m)
8 {
9     // Export classes.
10    export_Basis(m);
11    export_SessionReader(m);
12 }

```

The `PYBIND11_MODULE(name, m)` macro allows us to define a Python module inside C++. Note that in this case, the leading underscore in the name (i.e. `_LibUtilities`) is deliberate. To define the contents of the module, we call a number of functions that are prefixed by `export_`, which will define one or more Python classes that live in this module. These Python classes correspond with our Nektar++ classes. We adopt this approach simply so that we can split up the different classes into different files, because it is not possible to call `PYBIND11_MODULE` more than once.

These functions are defined in appropriately named files, for example `export_Basis()` lives in the file `LibUtilities/Python/Foundations/Basis.cpp`. This corresponds to the Nektar++ file `LibUtilities/Foundations/Basis.cpp` and the classes defined therein.

21.2 Basic class wrapping

As a very basic example of wrapping a class, let's consider a minimal wrapper for `SessionReader`:

Listing 21.2 Basic class wrapping with pybind11

```

1 void export_SessionReader(py::module &m)
2 {
3     py::class_<SessionReader, std::shared_ptr<SessionReader>>(
4         m, "SessionReader")
5
6         .def_static("CreateInstance", SessionReader_CreateInstance)
7
8         .def("GetSessionName", &SessionReader::GetSessionName,
9             py::return_value_policy::copy)
10
11        .def("InitSession", &SessionReader::InitSession,
12            py::arg("filenames") = py::list())
13
14        .def("Finalise", &SessionReader::Finalise)
15        ;
16 }

```

21.2.1 `py::class_<>`

This `pybind11` object defines a Python class in C++. It is templated, and in this case we have the following template arguments:

- `SessionReader` is the class that will be wrapped;
- `std::shared_ptr<SessionReader>` indicates that this object should be stored inside a shared (or smart) pointer, which we frequently use throughout the library, as can be seen by the frequent use of `SessionReaderSharedPtr`.

We then have two arguments:

- `m` is the module we are going to define the class within.
- `"SessionReader"` is the name of the class in Python.

21.2.2 Wrapping member functions

We then call the `.def` function on the `class_<>`, which allows us to define member functions on our class. This is equivalent to `def`-ing a function in Python. `.def` has two required parameters, and one optional parameter:

- The function name as a string, e.g. `"GetSessionName"`
- A function pointer that defines the C++ function that will be called
- An optional return policy, which we need to define when the C++ function returns a reference.

`pybind11` is very smart and can convert many Python objects to their equivalent C++ function arguments, and C++ return types of the function to their respective Python object. Many times therefore, one only needs to define the `.def()` call.

However, there are some instances where we need to do some additional conversion, mask some C++ complexity from the Python interface, or deal with functions that return references. We describe ways to deal with this below.

Thin wrappers

Instead of defining a function pointer to a member of the C++ class, we can define a function pointer to a separate function that defines some extra functionality. This is called a *thin wrapper*.

As an example, consider the `CreateInstance` function. In C++ we pass this function the command line arguments in the usual `argc`, `argv` format. In Python, command line arguments are defined as a list of strings inside `sys.argv`. However, `pybind11` does not know how to convert this list to `argc`, `argv`, so we need some additional code.

Listing 21.3 Thin wrapper example

```

1 SessionReaderSharedPtr SessionReader_CreateInstance(py::list &ns)
2 {
3     // ... some code here that converts a Python list to the standard
4     // c/c++ (int argc, char **argv) format for command line arguments.
5     // Then use this to construct a SessionReader and return it.
6     SessionReaderSharedPtr sr = SessionReader::CreateInstance(argc, argv);
7     return sr;
8 }

```

In Python, we can then simply call `session = SessionReader.CreateInstance(sys.argv)`.

Dealing with references

When dealing with functions in C++ that return references, e.g. `const NekDouble &GetFactor()` we need to supply an additional argument to `.def()`, since Python immutable types such as strings and integers cannot be passed by reference. There are also lifetime implications; i.e. if the C++ object being referenced is destroyed whilst still being used in Python, this would cause the program to abort.

To address this, we can define a *return value policy* which allows `pybind11` to take various actions based on the intent of the function. For a full list of options, consult the `pybind11` guide on [return value policies](#). However in this case we opt to use `copy` as highlighted above, which will create a copy of the const reference and return this to Python, thereby avoiding any lifetime issues.

Dealing with `Array<OneD, >`

The `LibUtilities/Python/BasicUtils/SharedArray.cpp` file contains a number of functions that allow for the automatic conversion of Nektar++ `Array<OneD, >` storage to and from NumPy `ndarray` objects. This means that you can wrap functions that take these as parameters and return arrays very easily. However bear in mind the following caveats:

- Any NumPy `ndarray` created from an `Array<OneD, >` (and vice versa) will share their memory. Although this avoids expensive memory copies, it means that changing the C++ array changes the contents of the NumPy array (and vice versa).
- Many functions in Nektar++ return Arrays through argument parameters. In Python this is a very unnatural way to write functions. For example:

```

1 # This is good
2 x, y, z = exp.GetCoords()
3 # This is bad
4 x, y, z = np.zeros(10), np.zeros(10), np.zeros(10)
5 exp.GetCoords(x,y,z)
6 # After this point x, y and z are updated as a result of GetCoords().

```

Use thin wrappers to overcome this problem. For examples of how to do this, particularly in returning tuples, consult the `StdRegions/StdExpansion.cpp` wrapper which contains numerous examples.

- `TwoD` and `ThreeD` arrays are not supported.

More information on the memory management and how the memory is shared can be found in [Section 23](#).

21.2.3 Inheritance

Nektar++ makes heavy use of inheritance, which can be translated to Python quite easily using `pybind11`. For a good example of how to do this, you can examine the `StdRegions` wrapper for `StdExpansion` and its elements such as `StdQuadExp`. In a cut-down form, these look like the following:

Listing 21.4 Inheritance with `pybind11`

```

1 void export_StdExpansion(py::module &m)
2 {
3     py::class_<StdExpansion, std::shared_ptr<StdExpansion>>(m, "
4         StdExpansion");
5 }
6 void export_StdQuadExp(py::module &m)
7 {
8     py::class_<StdQuadExp, StdExpansion, std::shared_ptr<StdQuadExp>>(
9         m, "StdQuadExp", py::multiple_inheritance())
10        .def(py::init<const LibUtilities::BasisKey &,
11              const LibUtilities::BasisKey &>());
12 }
```

Note the following:

- `StdExpansion` is an abstract class, so it has no initialiser and is non-copyable.
- We write the parent classes of `StdQuadExp` in the call to `class_`. Note that this does not necessarily need to include the full hierarchy of C++ inheritance: in `StdRegions` the inheritance graph for `StdQuadExp` looks like `StdExpansion -> StdExpansion2D -> StdQuadExp`. In the above wrapper, we omit the `StdExpansion2D` reference entirely. However, in order to do skip classes in the inheritance tree, we need to tell `pybind11` about this by passing the `py::multiple_inheritance` argument to the object.
- `py::init<>` is used to show how to wrap a C++ constructor. This can accept any arguments for which you have either written explicit wrappers or `pybind11` already knows how to convert.

21.2.4 Wrapping enums

Most Nektar++ enumerators come in the form:

```
1 enum MyEnum {  
2     eItemOne,  
3     eItemTwo,  
4     SIZE_MyEnum  
5 };  
6 static const char *MyEnumMap[] = {  
7     "ItemOne"  
8     "ItemTwo"  
9     "ItemThree"  
10 };
```

To wrap this, you can use the `NEKPY_WRAP_ENUM` macro defined in `NekPyConfig.hpp`, which in this case can be used as `NEKPY_WRAP_ENUM(m, MyEnum, MyEnumMap)`. Note that if instead of `const char *` the map is defined as a `const std::string`, you can use the `NEKPY_WRAP_ENUM_STRING` macro.

Documentation

The NekPy package certainly had to be documented in order to provide an easily accessible information about the wrapped classes to both users and developers. Ideally, the documentation should be:

- easily readable by humans,
- accessible using Python's inbuilt `help` method,
- compatible with the existing Nektar++ doxygen-based documentation.

Traditionally, Python classes and functions are documented using a docstring – a string occurring as the very first statement after the function or class is defined. This string is then accessible as the `__doc__` attribute of the function or class. The conventions associated with Python docstrings are described in PEP 257 document [33].

`pybind11` provides an easy way to include docstrings in the wrapped methods and classes as shown in Listing 22.1. The included docstrings will appear when Python `help` method is used.

Listing 22.1 Example of class and method documentation in `pybind11`

```

1 void export_Points(py::module &m)
2 {
3     py::class_<PointsKey>(m, "PointsKey",
4         "Create a PointsKey which uniquely defines quadrature points.\n"
5         "\n"
6         "Args:\n"
7         "\tnQuadPoints (integer): The number of quadrature points.\n"
8         "\tpointsType (PointsType object): The type of quadrature points.")
9         .def(py::init<const int, const PointsType&>())
10        .def("GetNumPoints", &PointsKey::GetNumPoints,
11            "Get the number of quadrature points in PointsKey.\n"
12            "\n"
13            "Args:\n"

```

```

14         "\tNone\n"
15         "Returns:\n"
16         "\tInteger defining the number of quadrature points in
    PointsKey.")
17 }

```

In order to fully document the existing bindings a number of enumeration type classes such as `PointsType` had to have docstrings included which proved to be a challenge since `pybind11` does not provide a way to do this. Instead a direct call to Python C API has to be made and the method adapted from [56] was used, as shown in Listing 22.2. A downside of this solution is that it does requires the developer to manually update the Python documentation if the enumeration type is ever changed (e.g. adding a new type of point) as the code does not automatically gather information from the C++ class. In theory it could be possible to create a Python script which would generate Python docstrings based on the existing C++ documentation using regular expressions; however it would be difficult to integrate this solution into the existing framework.

Listing 22.2 Code used to include docstings in enumetation type classes - part of `NekPyConfig.hpp`

```

1 #define NEKPY_WRAP_ENUM_STRING_DOCS(ENUMNAME,MAPNAME,DOCSTRING) \
2 { \
3     py::enum_<ENUMNAME> tmp(#ENUMNAME); \
4     for (int a = 0; a < (int)SIZENAME(ENUMNAME); ++a) \
5     { \
6         tmp.value(MAPNAME[a].c_str(), (ENUMNAME)a); \
7     } \
8     tmp.export_values(); \
9     PyTypeObject * pto = \
10     reinterpret_cast<PyTypeObject*>(tmp.ptr()); \
11     PyDict_SetItemString(pto->tp_dict, "__doc__", \
12     PyString_FromString(DOCSTRING)); \
13 }

```

There are many docstrings conventions that are popular in Python such as Epytext, reST and Google therefore a choice had to be made as to which docstring style to use. After considering the criteria which the documentation had to fulfill it was decided to use Google Python Style [57] as it is highly readable by humans (and hence an excellent choice for documentation which will be primarily accessible by Python `help` method) and can be used to generate automated documentation pages with Sphinx (a tool for creating Python documentation).

Unfortunately, it proved to be difficult to include the documentation of NumPy package in the existing doxygen-based documentation due to the fact that the docstrings are generated by `pybind11`. It was decided that if the time constraints of the project permit this problem could be resolved at a later date and the possibility of accessing the documentation though inbuilt `help` method was deemed sufficient.

Memory management in NekPy

A significant amount of effort has been invested into developing efficient memory management techniques, to enable the sharing of memory between Python and C++ for the ubiquitous *Nektar++* `Array` structure which is used throughout the code. The computations carried out in *Nektar++* are usually highly demanding on the machines they are run on, therefore any unnecessary data duplication or memory leaks would be detrimental to software performance.

This section first outlines some precursor information relating to the basics of memory management in C++ and Python, before explaining the strategy used in NekPy to effectively use the resources when passing data between the different layers of the bindings.

23.1 Memory management in C++ and Python

23.1.1 C++

In C++ the memory used by the application is divided into five containers [50]:

- text segment – containing the set of instructions for the program to execute;
- data segment – containing static and global variables initialised with values, e.g. `float pi = 3.14;` – the size of the data segment is pre-determined at the time of the compilation of the program and depends on the size of the variables in the source code;
- bss (block started by symbol) segment – containing static and global variables not explicitly initialised with any value, e.g. `int n;` – the size of the data segment is pre-determined at the time of the compilation of the program and depends on the size of the variables in the source code;
- stack – a LIFO (last in, first out) structure containing the function calls and variables initialised in the functions – the size of the stack is pre-determined at

the time of compilation of the program and depends on the operating system and development environment;

- heap – containing all dynamically allocated memory (e.g. using instruction `new` in C++).

The access to data on the heap is maintained by pointers which store the memory address of said data. If the pointer ceases to exist (e.g. because the function which contained it finished running and hence was taken off the stack) the programmer has no way of referencing the data on the heap again. The unused, inaccessible data will stay in the memory, consuming valuable resources if not properly deallocated using `delete` instruction. Issues may arise if the same memory address is held by two different pointers – the deallocation of memory can render one of the pointers empty and possibly lead to errors.

In order to facilitate memory management, C++11 standard introduced shared pointers (`shared_ptr`) [1]. Shared pointers maintain a reference counter which is increased when another shared pointer refers to the same memory address. The memory will only be deallocated when all shared pointers referencing the memory are destroyed, as shown in Figure 23.1.

Python

Python manages memory through a private heap containing all Python objects [29]. An internal memory manager is used to ensure the memory is properly allocated and deallocated while the script runs. In contrast to C++, Python's memory manager tries to optimise the memory usage as much as possible. For example, the same object reference is allocated to a new variable if the object already exists in memory. Another important feature of Python's memory manager is the use of garbage collector based on reference counting. When the object is no longer referenced by any variable the reference counter is set to zero, which triggers the garbage collector to free the memory (possibly at some later time). A disadvantage of this solution is slower execution time, since the garbage collector routines have to be called periodically. Features of the Python memory manager are schematically shown in Figure 23.2

It is unusual for the Python programmer to manually modify the way Python uses memory resources – however it is sometimes necessary, as is the case with this project. In particular, the Python C API exposes several macros to handle reference counting, and developers can increase or decrease the reference counter of the object using `Py_INCREF` and `Py_DECREF` respectively [30]. In `pybind11`, these calls are wrapped in the use of either `incref` and `decref` functions inside either a `py::handle` or `py::object`. The difference between these classes is that `handle` makes no adjustment to the underlying `PyObject` reference count, whereas `py::object` increments/decrements the counter as the object goes in and out of C++ scope.

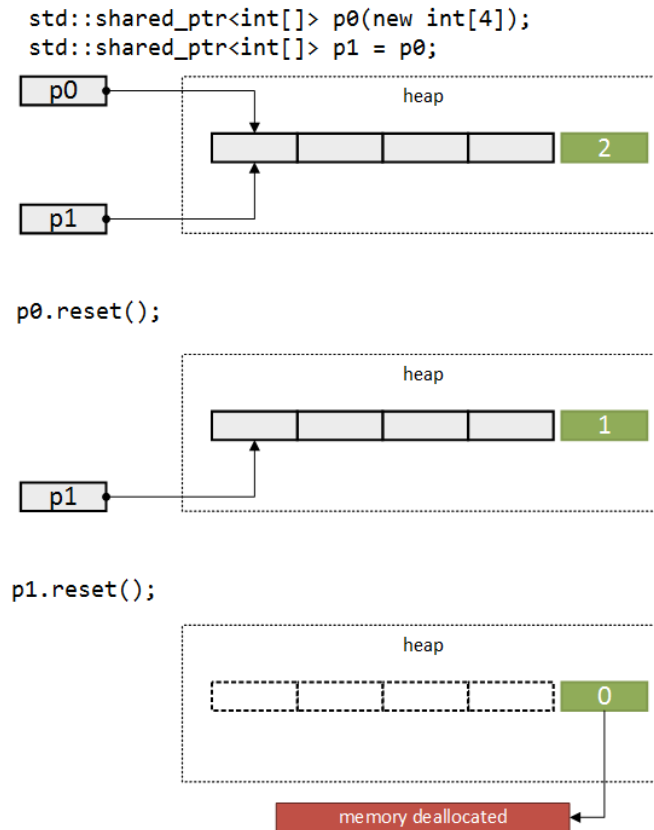


Figure 23.1 Memory management with C++11 `shared_ptr`. The two declared shared pointers reference an array of 4 integers. Reference counter shown in green.

23.2 Passing C++ memory to Python

To highlight the technique for passing C++ memory natively into Python's `ndarray`, we consider first the case of the native *Nektar++* matrix structure. In many situations, matrices created by *Nektar++* (usually a `shared_ptr` of `NekMatrix<D, StandardMatrixTag>` type) need to be passed to Python - for instance, when performing differentiation using e.g. Gauss quadrature rules a differentiation matrix must be obtained. In order to keep the program memory efficient, the data should not be copied into a NumPy array but rather be referenced by the Python interface. This, however, complicates the issue of memory management.

Consider a situation where C++ program no longer needs to work with the generated array and the memory dedicated to it is deallocated. If this memory has already been shares with Python, the Python interface may still require the data contained within the array. However since the memory has already been deallocated from the C++ side, this will typically cause an out-of-bounds memory exception. To prevent such situations a solution employing reference counting must be used.

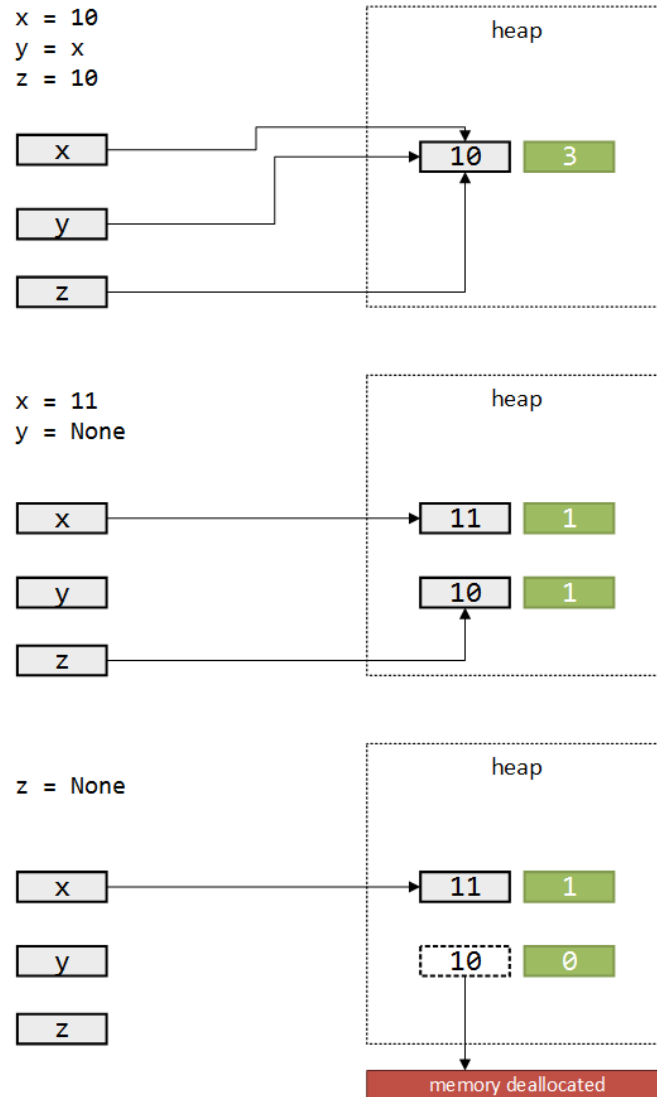


Figure 23.2 Memory management in Python. Memory is optimised as much as possible and garbage collector deallocates the memory if the reference counter (shown in green) reaches 0.

Converter method

`pybind11` provides the methods to convert a C++ type element to one recognised by Python as well as to maintain appropriate reference counting. Listing 23.1 shows an abridged version of the converter method with comments on individual parameters. The object requiring conversion is a `shared_ptr` of `NekMatrix<D, StandardMatrixTag>` type (named `mat`).

Listing 23.1 Converter method for converting the C++ arrays into Python NumPy arrays.

```
1 namespace pybind11::detail
2 {
```

```

3
4 template <typename Type, typename T> struct standard_nekmatrix_caster
5 {
6 public:
7     PYBIND11_TYPE_CASTER(Type, const_name("NekMatrix<T>"));
8
9     bool load(handle src, bool)
10    {
11        // Perform Python to C++ conversion: returns true if successful,
12        false
13        // otherwise.
14    }
15
16    // Conversion part 2 (C++ -> Python)
17    static handle cast(
18        const Nektar::NekMatrix<T, Nektar::StandardMatrixTag> &src,
19        return_value_policy, handle)
20    {
21        // Perform C++ to Python conversion.
22    }
23 };
24
25 template <typename Type>
26 struct type_caster<Nektar::NekMatrix<Type, Nektar::StandardMatrixTag>>
27     : standard_nekmatrix_caster<
28         Nektar::NekMatrix<Type, Nektar::StandardMatrixTag>, Type>
29 {
30 }
31 } // namespace pybind11::detail

```

Firstly we give a brief overview of the general process undertaken during type conversion. `pybind11` maintains a registry of known C++ to Python conversion types, which by default allows for fundamental data type conversions such as `double` and `float`. In this manner, many C++ functions can be automatically converted, for example when they are used in `.def` calls when registering a Python class. Clearly the `convert` function here contains much of the functionality. In order to perform automatic conversion between the `NekMatrix` and a 2D `ndarray`, we register the conversion function inside the `pybind11` namespace via a template specialisation of `type_caster`. We also note that throughout the conversion code (and elsewhere in `NekPy`), we make use of the `pybind11` NumPy bindings. These are a lightweight wrapper around the NumPy C API, which simplifies the syntax somewhat and avoids direct use of the API.

The custom caster has two methods, `load` and `cast` that perform conversion from Python to C++, and C++ to Python respectively. We now go through each listing.

Listing 23.2 Python to C++ converter for `NekMatrix`

```

1 bool load(handle src, bool)
2 {
3     // Perform some checks: the source should be an ndarray.
4     if (!array_t<T>::check_(src))

```

```

5     {
6         return false;
7     }
8
9     // The array should be a c-style, contiguous array of type T.
10    auto buf = array_t<T, array::c_style | array::forcecast>::ensure(src);
11    if (!buf)
12    {
13        return false;
14    }
15
16    // There should be two dimensions.
17    auto dims = buf.ndim();
18    if (dims != 2)
19    {
20        return false;
21    }
22
23    // Copy data across from the Python array to C++.
24    std::vector<size_t> shape = {buf.shape()[0], buf.shape()[1]};
25    value = Nektar::NekMatrix<T, Nektar::StandardMatrixTag>(
26        shape[0], shape[1], buf.data(), Nektar::eFULL, buf.data());
27
28    return true;
29 }

```

For `NekMatrix` we do not yet have custom C++-side code to handle Python as a data source. The `cast` routine therefore simply copies the data from the Python handle. The thing to note in this instance is that the class member variable `value` stores the resulting C++ value as a type `Type`.

In terms of conversion from Python to C++, we use the following `cast` function.

Listing 23.3 C++ to Python converter for `NekMatrix`

```

1 static handle cast(
2     const Nektar::NekMatrix<T, Nektar::StandardMatrixTag> &src,
3     return_value_policy, handle)
4 {
5     using NMat = Nektar::NekMatrix<T, Nektar::StandardMatrixTag>;
6
7     // Construct a new wrapper matrix to hold onto the data. Assign a
8     // destructor so that the wrapper is cleaned up when the Python object
9     // is deallocated.
10    capsule c(new NMat(src.GetRows(), src.GetColumns(), src.GetPtr(),
11                      Nektar::eWrapper),
12              [](void *ptr) {
13                  NMat *mat = (NMat *)ptr;
14                  delete mat;
15              });
16
17    // Create the NumPy array, passing the capsule. When we go out of scope,
18    // c's reference count will have been reduced by 1, but array increases

```



```

19 // the reference count when it assigns the base to the array.
20 array a({src.GetRows(), src.GetColumns()},
21         {sizeof(T), src.GetRows() * sizeof(T)}, src.GetRawPtr(), c);
22
23 // This causes the array to be released without decreasing its
24 // reference
25 // count, which we do since if we just returned a, then the array would
26 // be deallocated immediately when this function returns.
27 return a.release();
28 }

```

This conversion can be done more efficiently, since we may construct a `NekMatrix` using a reference count of the original matrix, by accessing its `Array<OneD, T>` object via the `GetPtr` method. To ensure this array lives for the entire time of the NumPy array, we wrap this into a Python capsule object. The capsule is designed to hold a C pointer and a callback function that is called when the Python object is deallocated.

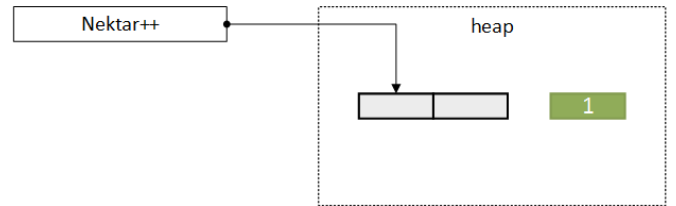
A new matrix is therefore constructed and passed to the capsule. This will prevent it being destroyed if it is in use in Python, even if on the C++ side the memory is deallocated. The callback function simply deletes the allocated pointer when it is no longer required, cleaning up the memory appropriately. This process is shown in Figure 23.3. It is worth noting that the steps (c) and (d) can be reversed and the pointer created by the Python binding can be removed first. In this case the memory will be deallocated only when the underlying `Array<OneD, T>` created by C++ is deallocated.

Next, the converter method returns a NumPy array using the `array` object from `pybind11`. Note that the `capsule` object is passed as the `ndarray` base argument – i.e. the object that owns the data. In this case, when all `ndarray` objects that refer to the data become deallocated, NumPy will not directly deallocate the data but instead release its reference to the capsule. The capsule will then be deallocated, which will deallocate the `NekMatrix` and thus decrement the counter in the `Array<OneD, >`. We also note that data ordering is important for matrix storage; *Nektar++* stores data in column-major order, whereas NumPy arrays are traditionally row-major. The stride of the array has to be passed into the `np::from_data` in a form of a tuple (`a`, `b`), where `a` is the number of bytes needed to skip to get to the same position in the next row and `b` is the number of bytes needed to skip to get to the same position in the next column.

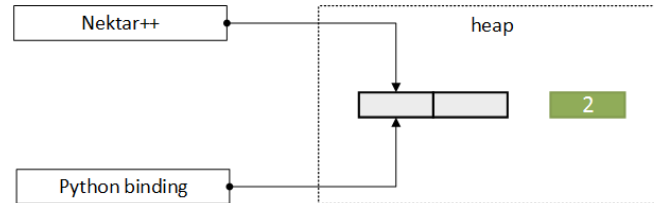
Finally, in order to stop Python from immediately destroying the resulting `ndarray`, we call the `release` function on the array, which prevents the reference counter from being decremented when the array is returned.

Testing

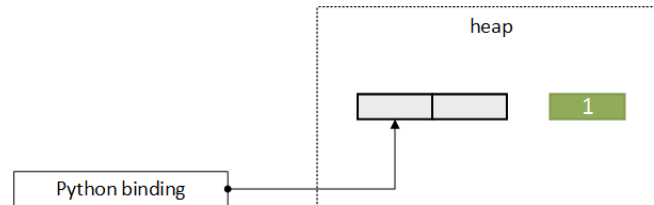
The process outlined above requires little manual intervention from the programmer. There are no explicit calls to Python C API as all operations are carried out by `pybind11`. Therefore, the testing focused mostly on correctness of returned data, in particular the order of the array. To this end, the *Differentiation* tutorials were used as tests. In order



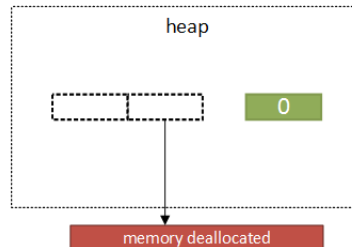
(a) Nektar++ creates a data array referenced by a `shared_ptr`



(b) Array is passed to Python binding which creates a new `shared_ptr` to the data



(c) Nektar++ no longer needs the data - its `shared_ptr` is removed but the memory is not deallocated



(d) When the data is no longer needed in the Python interface the destructor is called and `shared_ptr` is removed.

Figure 23.3 Memory management of data created in C++ using `shared_ptr` and passed to Python. Reference counter shown in green.

to correctly run the tutorials the Python wrapper needs to retrieve the differentiation matrix which, as mentioned before, has to be converted to a datatype Python recognises. The test runs the differentiation tutorials and compares the final result to the fixed expected value. The test is automatically run as a part of `ctest` command if both the Python wrapper and the tutorials have been built.

23.2.1 Passing Python data to C++

Conversely, a similar problem exists when data is created in Python and has to be passed to the C++ program. In this case, as the data is managed by Python, the main reference counter should be maintained by the Python object and incremented or decremented as appropriate using `incrcf` and `decrcf` methods respectively. Although we do not support this process for the `NekMatrix` as described above, we do use this process for the `Array<OneD, T>` structure. When the array is no longer needed by the C++ program the reference counter on the Python side should be decremented in order for Python garbage collection to work appropriately – however this should only happen when the array was created by Python in the first place.

The files implementing the below procedure are:

- `LibUtilities/Python/BasicUtils/SharedArray.cpp` and
- `LibUtilities/BasicUtils/SharedArray.hpp`

Modifications to `Array<OneD, const DataType>` class template

In order to perform the operations described above, the C++ array structure should contain information on whether or not it was created from data managed by Python. To this end, two new attributes were added to C++ `Array<OneD, const DataType>` class template in the form of a `struct`:

```
1 struct PythonInfo {
2     void *m_pyObject; // Underlying PyObject pointer
3     void (*m_callback)(void *); // Callback
4 };
```

where:

- `m_pyObject` is a pointer to the `PyObject` containing the data, which should be an `ndarray`;
- `m_callback` is a function pointer to the callback function which will decrement the reference counter of the `PyObject`.

Inside `Array<OneD, T>`, this struct is held as a double pointer, i.e.:

```
1 PythonInfo **m_pythonInfo;
```

This is done because if the `ndarray` was created originally from a C++ to Python conversion (as outlined in the previous section), we need to convert the Array – and any other shared arrays that hold the same C++ memory – to reference the Python array. If we did not do this, then it is possible that the C++ array could be destroyed whilst it is

still used on the Python side, leading to an out-of-bounds exception. By storing this as a double pointer, in a similar fashion to the underlying reference counter `m_count`, we can ensure that all C++ arrays are updated when necessary. We can keep track of Python arrays by checking `*m_pythonInfo`; if this is not set to `nullptr` then the array has been constructed through the Python to C++ converter.

Adding new attributes to the arrays might cause a significantly increased memory usage or additional unforeseen overheads, although this was not seen in benchmarking. However to avoid all possibility of this, a preprocessor directive has been added to only include the additional arguments if NekPy has been built (using the option `NEKTAR_BUILD_PYTHON`).

A new constructor has been added to the class template, as seen in Listing 23.4. `m_memory_pointer` and `m_python_decrement` have been set to `nullptr` in the pre-existing constructors. A similar constructor was added for `const` arrays to ensure that these can also be passed between the languages. Note that no calls to Nektar++ array initialisation policies are made in this constructor, unlike in the pre-existing ones, as there is no need for the new array to copy the data.

Listing 23.4 New constructor for initialising arrays created through the Python to C++ converter method.

```

1 Array(unsigned int dim1Size, DataType* data, void* memory_pointer, void (*
  python_decrement)(void *)) :
2   m_size( dim1Size ),
3   m_capacity( dim1Size ),
4   m_data( data ),
5   m_count( nullptr ),
6   m_offset( 0 )
7 {
8   m_count = new unsigned int();
9   *m_count = 1;
10
11   m_pythonInfo = new PythonInfo *();
12   *m_pythonInfo = new PythonInfo();
13   (*m_pythonInfo)->m_callback = python_decrement;
14   (*m_pythonInfo)->m_pyObject = memory_pointer;
15 }
```

Changes have also been made to the destructor, as shown in Listing 23.5, in order to ensure that if the data was initially created in Python the callback function would decrement the reference counter of the NekPy array object. The detailed procedure for deleting arrays is described further in this section.

Listing 23.5 The modified destructor for C++ arrays.

```

1 ~Array()
2 {
3   if( m_count == nullptr )
4   {
5     return;
6   }
```

```

7
8     *m_count -= 1;
9     if( *m_count == 0 )
10    {
11        if (*m_pythonInfo == nullptr)
12        {
13            ArrayDestructionPolicy<DataType>::Destroy( m_data, m_capacity )
14            ;
15            MemoryManager<DataType>::RawDeallocate( m_data, m_capacity );
16        }
17        else
18        {
19            (*m_pythonInfo)->m_callback((*m_pythonInfo)->m_pyObject);
20            delete *m_pythonInfo;
21        }
22        delete m_pythonInfo;
23        delete m_count; // Clean up the memory used for the reference count.
24    }
25 }

```

Creation of new arrays

The following algorithm has been proposed to create new arrays in Python and allow the C++ code to access their contents:

1. The NumPy array object to be converted is passed as an argument to a C++ method available in the Python wrapper.
2. The converter method is called to convert a Python NumPy array into C++ `Array<OneD, const DataType>` object.
3. If the NumPy array was created through the C++-to-Python process (which can be determined by checking the `base` of the NumPy array), then:
 - extract the *Nektar++* Array from the capsule;
 - convert the Array (and all of its other references) to a Python array so that any C++ arrays that share this memory also know to call the appropriate decrement function;
 - set the NumPy array's `base` to an empty object to destroy the original capsule.
4. Otherwise, the converter creates a new `Array<OneD, const DataType>` object with the following attribute values:
 - `data` points to the data contained by the NumPy array,
 - `memory_pointer` points to the NumPy array object,
 - `python_decrement` points to the function decrementing the reference counter of the PyObject,

- subsequently, `m_count` is equal to 1.
5. The Python reference counter of the NumPy array object is increased.
 6. If any new references to the array are created in C++ the `m_count` attribute is increased accordingly. Likewise, if new references to NumPy array object are made in Python the reference counter increases.

The process is schematically shown in Figure 23.4a and 23.4b.

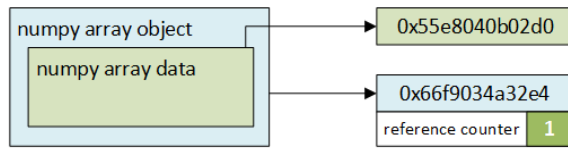
Array deletion

The array deletion process relies on decrementing two reference counters: one on the Python side of the program (Python reference counter) and the other one on C++ side of the program. The former registers how many Python references to the data there are and if there is a C++ reference to the array. The latter (represented by `m_count` attribute) counts only the number of references on the C++ side and as soon as it reaches zero the callback function is triggered to decrement the Python reference counter so that registers that the data is no longer referred to in C++. Figure 23.5 presents the overview of the procedure used to delete the data.

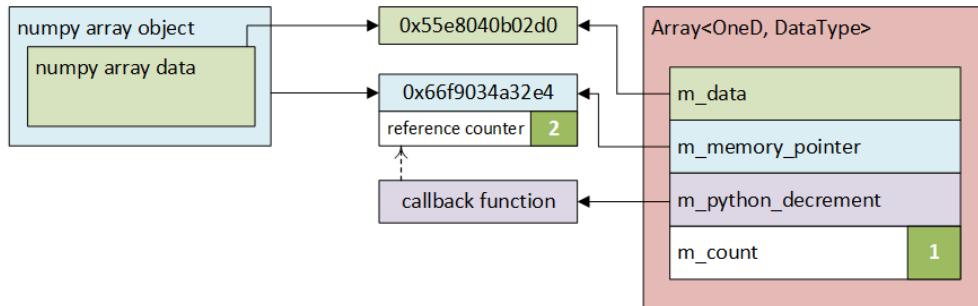
In short, the fact that C++ uses the array is represented to Python as just an increment to the object reference counter. Even if the Python object goes out of scope or is explicitly deleted, the reference counter will always be non-zero until the callback function to decrement it is executed, as shown in Figure 23.4c. Similarly, if the C++ array is deleted first, the Python object will still exist as the reference counter will be non-zero (see Figure 23.4d).

Converter method

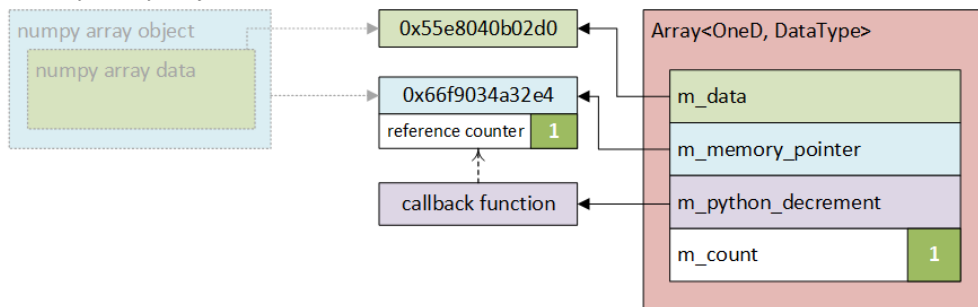
As with conversion from C++ to Python, a converter method was registered to make Python NumPy arrays available in C++ with `pybind11`, which can be found in the `SharedArray.hpp` bindings file.



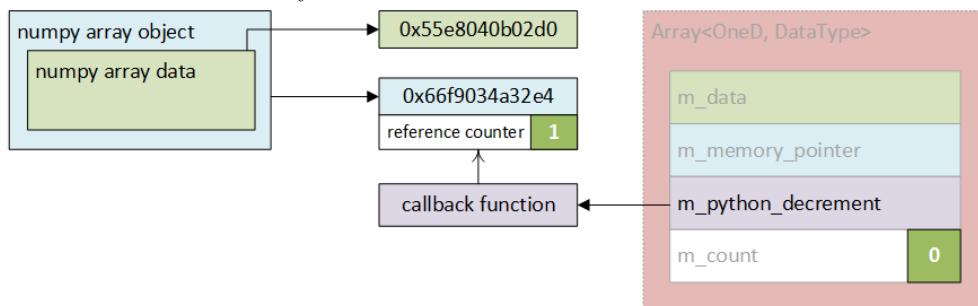
(a) The NumPy array is created in Python. Note that the NumPy object and the data it contains are represented by two separate memory addresses.



(b) The C++ array is created through the converter method: its attributes point to the appropriate memory addresses and the reference counter of the memory address of NumPy array object is incremented.



(c) If the NumPy object is deleted first, the reference counter is decremented, but the data still exists in memory.



(d) If the C++ array is deleted first, the callback function decrements the reference counter of the NumPy object but the data still exists in memory.

Figure 23.4 Diagram showing the process of creation and deletion of arrays. Reference counters shown in green.

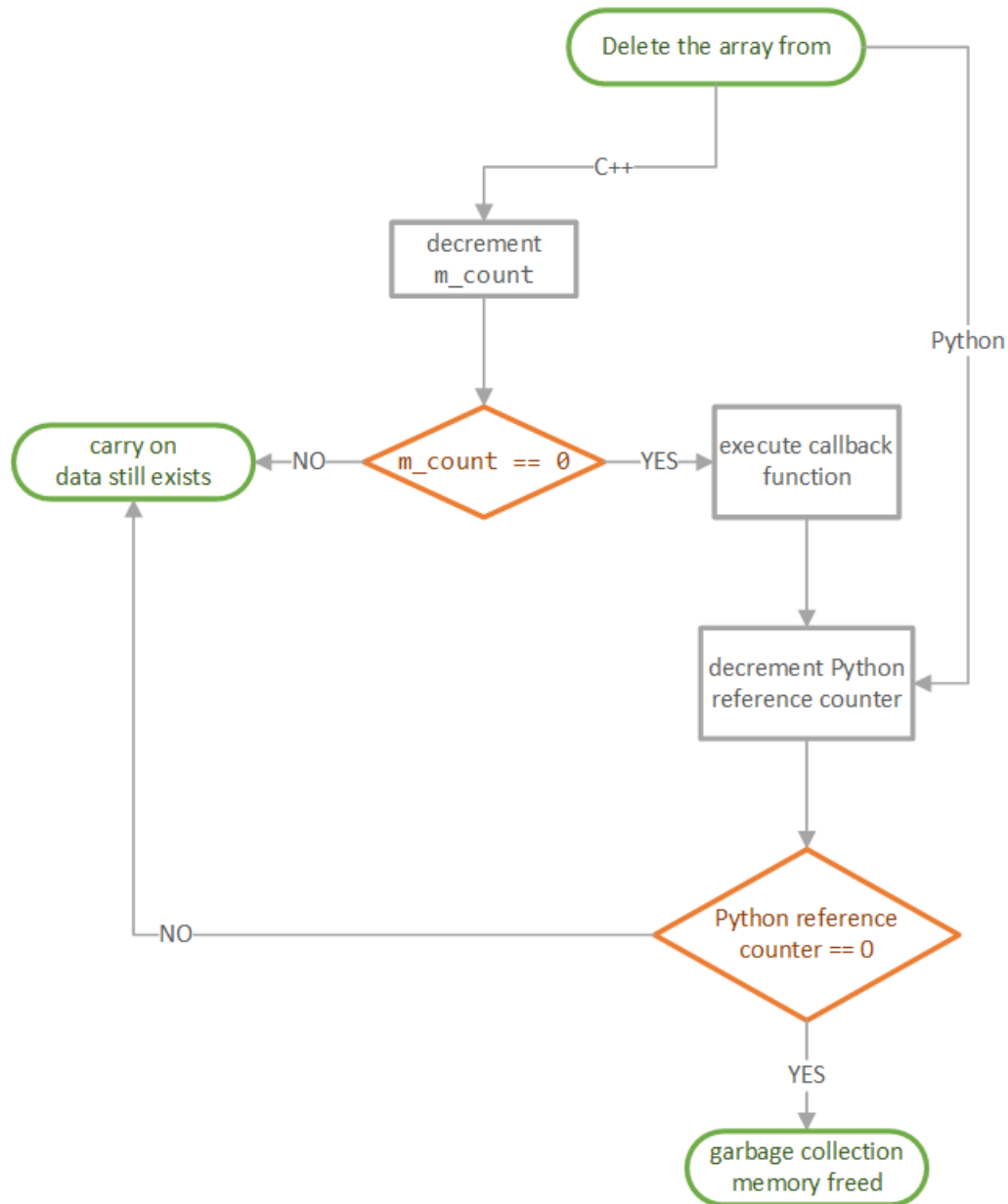


Figure 23.5 Flowchart describing the procedure for array deletion from either side of the code.

Testing

As the process of converting arrays from Python to C++ required making direct calls to C API and relying on custom-written methods, more detailed testing was deemed necessary. In order to thoroughly check if the conversion works as expected, three tests were conducted to determine whether the array is:

1. referenced (not copied) between the C++ program and the Python wrapper,

2. accessible to C++ program after being deleted in Python code,
3. accessible in Python script after being deleted from C++ objects.

Python files containing test scripts are currently located in `library\Demos\Python\tests`. They should be converted into unit tests that should be run when Python components are built.

FieldConvert in NekPy

This chapter describes the FieldConvert utility in Python using the bindings and wrappers created for the `FieldUtils` library. For detailed instructions on how to use the interface please refer to the *Nektar++* User Guide section 5.5.

24.1 Idea and motivation

The primary objective is to allow the user to execute a sequence of commands from a Python script that implement the functionality of FieldConvert, thereby giving freedom to customise the order in which modules are used and which command line options are passed to them. One problem with FieldConvert is when the user wishes to perform the same task on many files; for example converting a number of .chk files to VTK format. To achieve this using FieldConvert, one must run a command like the following n times for each individual file.

```
FieldConvert -m session.xml field_n.chk field_n.vtu
```

These .chk files represent the same fields, only at different moments in time, and so the mesh described in the session file is the same. For each file, an instance of `Field` is initialised and its member variables populated by the modules `InputFld`, `ProcessCreateExp`, and `OutputVtk`. This is clearly computationally inefficient. In the Python implementation, we are able to initialise instances of these classes only once, and then for each file populate and clear the variables that differ.

24.1.1 Bindings

The bindings are stored within a directory named 'Python' in the `FieldUtils` directory.

- `FieldUtils.cpp` is responsible for exporting the `FieldUtils` Python library.
- `Field.cpp` contains bindings for the `Field` struct.

- `Module.cpp` contains bindings for `Module`, `InputModule`, and `OutputModule`.

Bibliography

- [1] std::shared_ptr - cppreference.com. [Accessed 21 March 2018].
- [2] Mark Ainsworth. Pyramid algorithms for bernstein-bézier finite elements of high, nonuniform order in any dimension. *SIAM Journal of Scientific Computing*, 36:A543–A569, 2014.
- [3] Mark Ainsworth, Gaelle Andriamaro, and Oleg Davydov. Bernstein-bézier finite elements of arbitrary order and optimal assembly procedures. *SIAM Journal of Scientific Computing*, 33:3087–3109, 2011.
- [4] R. Aris. *Vectors, tensors, and the basic equations of fluid mechanics*. Dover Pubns, 1989.
- [5] Ivo Babuska, Barna A Szabo, and I Norman Katz. The p-version of the finite element method. *SIAM journal on numerical analysis*, 18(3):515–545, 1981.
- [6] Wolfgang Bangerth, Ralf Hartmann, and Guido Kanschat. deal.II—a general-purpose object-oriented finite element library. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software (TOMS)*, 33(4):24, 2007.
- [7] Hugh M Blackburn and SJ Sherwin. Formulation of a galerkin spectral element–fourier method for three-dimensional incompressible flows in cylindrical geometries. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 197(2):759–778, 2004.
- [8] A. Bolis, C.D. Cantwell, R.M. Kirby, and S.J. Sherwin. h-to-p efficiently: Optimal implementation strategies for explicit time-dependent problems using the spectral/hp element method. *International Journal for Numerical Methods in Fluids*, 75:591–607, 2014.
- [9] A.I. Borisenko, I.E. Tarapov, and R.A. Silverman (Translator). *Vector and Tensor Analysis with Applications*. Dover Books on Mathematics, 2012.
- [10] J. C. Butcher. General linear methods. *Acta Numerica*, 15:157–256, 2006.

- [11] C.D. Cantwell, D. Moxey, A. Comerford, A. Bolis, G. Rocco, G. Mengaldo, D. de Grazia, S. Yakovlev, J-E Lombard, D. Ekelschot, B. Jordi, H. Xu, Y. Mohamied, C. Eskilsson, B. Nelson, P. Vos, C. Biotto, R.M. Kirby, and S.J. Sherwin. Nektar++: An open-source spectral/hp element framework. *Computer Physics Communications*, 192:205–219, 2015.
- [12] C.D. Cantwell, S.J. Sherwin, R.M. Kirby, and P.H. Kelly. From h-to-p efficiently: Selecting the optimal spectral/hp discretisation in three dimensions. *Math. Model. Nat. Phenom.*, 6(3):84–96, 2011.
- [13] C.D. Cantwell, S.J. Sherwin, R.M. Kirby, and P.H.J. Kelly. From h-to-p efficiently: Strategy selection for operator evaluation on hexahedral and tetrahedral elements. *Computers and Fluids*, 43:23–28, 2011.
- [14] C.D. Cantwell, S. Yakovlev, R.M. Kirby, N.S. Peters, and S.J. Sherwin. High-order continuous spectral/hp element discretisation for reaction-diffusion problems on a surface. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 257:813–829, 2014.
- [15] C. Canuto, M.Y. Hussaini, A. Quarteroni, and T.A. Zang. *Spectral Methods in Fluid Mechanics*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1987.
- [16] Claudio Canuto, Paola Gervasio, and Alfio Quarteroni. Finite-element preconditioning of g-ni spectral methods. *SIAM Journal on Scientific Computing*, 31:4422–4451, 2009.
- [17] Bernardo Cockburn, George Karniadakis, and Chi-Wang Shu. *Discontinuous Galerkin Methods: Theory, Computation and Applications*. Springer-Verlag, 2000.
- [18] J. Austin Cottrell, Thomas J. R. Hughes, and Yuri Bazilevs. *Isogeometric Analysis: Toward Integration of CAD and FEA*. John Wiley and Sons, 2009.
- [19] Andreas Dedner, Robert Klöforn, Martin Nolte, and Mario Ohlberger. A generic interface for parallel and adaptive discretization schemes: abstraction principles and the DUNE-FEM module. *Computing*, 90(3-4):165–196, 2010.
- [20] James W. Demmel. *Applied Numerical Linear Algebra*. SIAM, Philadelphia, PA, USA, 1997.
- [21] Peter Deuffhard. Recent progress in extrapolation methods for ordinary differential equations. *SIAM review*, 27(4):505–535, 1985.
- [22] M.O. Deville, P.F. Fisher, and E.H. Mund. *High-Order Methods for Incompressible Fluid Flow*. Cambridge University Press, 2002.
- [23] Julia Docampo-Sánchez, Jennifer K Ryan, Mahsa Mirzargar, and Robert M Kirby. Multi-dimensional filtering: Reducing the dimension through rotation. *SIAM Journal on Scientific Computing*, 39(5):A2179–A2200, 2017.

- [24] S. Dong and J. Shen. An unconditionally stable rotational velocity-correction scheme for incompressible flows. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 229(19):7013–7029, 2010.
- [25] M. Dubiner. Spectral methods on triangles and other domains. *J. Sci. Comp.*, 6:345, 1991.
- [26] M.G. Duffy. Quadrature over a pyramid or cube of integrands with a singularity at a vertex. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.*, 19:1260, 1982.
- [27] Alok Dutt, Leslie Greengard, and Vladimir Rokhlin. Spectral deferred correction methods for ordinary differential equations. *BIT Numerical Mathematics*, 40:241–266, 2000.
- [28] Paul Fischer, James Lottes, Stefan Kerkemeier, Oana Marin, Katherine Heisey, Aleks Obabko, Elia Merzari, and Yulia Peet. *Nek5000 User Manual*. ANL/MCS-TM-351, 2014.
- [29] Python Software Foundation. Memory management - python 2.7.14 documentation. [Accessed 21 March 2018].
- [30] Python Software Foundation. Reference counting - python 2.7.14 documentation. [Accessed 21 March 2018].
- [31] D. Funaro. *Polynomial Approximations of Differential Equations: Lecture Notes in Physics, Volume 8*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1992.
- [32] F.X. Giraldo, J.F. Kelly, and E.M. Constantinescu. Implicit explicit formulations of a three dimensional non-hydrostatic unified model of the atmosphere (NUMA). *SIAM Journal of Scientific Computing*, 35:1162–1194, 2013.
- [33] van Rossum G. Goodger D. Pep 257 – docstring conventions, 2001. [Accessed 16th May 2018].
- [34] Michael T. Heath. *Scientific Computing: An Introductory Survey*. McGraw-Hill Companies, 2002.
- [35] Jan Hesthaven, Sigal Gottlieb, and David Gottlieb. *Spectral Methods for Time-Dependent Problems*. Cambridge University Press, 2007.
- [36] Jan S Hesthaven and Tim Warburton. *Nodal discontinuous Galerkin methods: algorithms, analysis, and applications*, volume 54. Springer, 2007.
- [37] J.S. Hesthaven. From electrostatics to almost optimal nodal sets for polynomial interpolation in a simplex. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.*, 35(2):655–676, 1998.
- [38] J.S. Hesthaven and T.C. Warburton. *Nodal Discontinuous Galerkin Methods: Algorithms, Analysis, and Applications*. Springer Texts in Applied Mathematics 54. Springer Verlag: New York, 2008.

- [39] T. J. R. Hughes. *The Finite Element Method*. Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, 1987.
- [40] Ashok Jallepalli, Julia Docampo-Sánchez, Jennifer K Ryan, Robert Haimes, and Robert M Kirby. On the treatment of field quantities and elemental continuity in FEM solutions. *IEEE Transactions on Visualization and Computer Graphics*, 24(1):903–912, 2017.
- [41] Cem Kaner, Jack Falk, and Hung Quoc Nguyen. *Testing Computer Software*. John Wiley & Sons, 2010.
- [42] George Em Karniadakis, Moshe Israeli, and Steven A. Orszag. High-order splitting methods for the incompressible navier-stokes equations. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 97(2):414–443, 1991.
- [43] George Em Karniadakis and Robert M. Kirby. *Parallel Scientific Computing in C++ and MPI*. Cambridge University Press, New-York, NY, USA, 2003.
- [44] George Em Karniadakis and Spencer J. Sherwin. *Spectral/hp element methods for Computational Fluid Dynamics (Second Edition)*. Oxford University Press, 2005.
- [45] David Ketcheson and Umair bin Waheed. A comparison of high-order explicit runge–kutta, extrapolation, and deferred correction methods in serial and parallel. *Communications in applied mathematics and computational science*, 9(2):175–200, 2014.
- [46] Robert M. Kirby and Spencer J. Sherwin. Aliasing errors due to quadratic nonlinearities on triangular spectral/hp element discretisations. *Journal of Engineering Mathematics*, 56:273–288, 2006.
- [47] D. A. Knoll and D. E. Keyes. Jacobian-free Newton-Krylov methods: A survey of approaches and applications. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 193(2):357–397, January 2004.
- [48] David A. Kopriva. *Implementing Spectral Methods for Partial Differential Equations: Algorithms for Scientists and Engineers*. Springer, 2009.
- [49] Anders Logg, Kent-Andre Mardal, and Garth Wells (editors). *Automated Solution of Differential Equations by the Finite Element Method*. Springer Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering, Volume 84, 2012.
- [50] Daconta M. *C++ pointers and dynamic memory management*. New York: Wiley, 1995.
- [51] Reddy M. *API Design for C++*. Burlington: Elsevier, 2011.
- [52] A.T.T. McRae, G.-T. Bercea, L. Mitchell, D.A. Ham, and C.J. Cotter. Automated generation and symbolic manipulation of tensor product finite elements. *SIAM Journal on Scientific Computing*, 38(5):S25–S47, 2016.

- [53] Scott Meyers. *Effective C++: 55 Specific Ways to Improve Your Programs and Designs (Third Edition)*. Addison-Wesley Professional, 2005.
- [54] Michael L Minion. Semi-implicit spectral deferred correction methods for ordinary differential equations. 2003.
- [55] D. Moxey, R. Amici, and M. Kirby. Efficient matrix-free high-order finite element evaluation for simplicial elements. *SIAM Journal on Scientific Computing*, 42(3):C97–C123, 2020.
- [56] Jaroszyński P. Piotr jaroszyński’s blog: Boost.python: docstrings in enums, 2007. [Accessed 16th May 2018].
- [57] Jhong E. et al. Patel A., Picard A. Google python style guide. [Accessed 16th May 2018].
- [58] Youcef Saad and Martin H. Schultz. GMRES: A generalized minimal residual algorithm for solving nonsymmetric linear systems. *SIAM Journal on Scientific and Statistical Computing*, 7(3):856–869, 1986.
- [59] Ch. Schwab. *p- and hp- Finite Element Methods: Theory and Applications in Solid and Fluid Mechanics*. Oxford University Press, 1999.
- [60] S. J. Sherwin. A substepping navier-stokes splitting scheme for spectral/hp element discretisations. In *Parallel Computational Fluid Dynamics 2002*, pages 43–52. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 2003.
- [61] J. C. Simo and F. Armero. Unconditional stability and long-term behavior of transient algorithms for the incompressible navier-stokes and euler equations. *Computer Methods in Applied Mechanics and Engineering*, 111(1):111–154, 1994.
- [62] Bjarne Stroustrup. *The C++ Programming Language (Fourth Edition)*. Addison-Wesley Professional, 2013.
- [63] M. Taylor and B.A. Wingate. The fekete collocation points for triangular spectral elements. *Journal on Numerical Analysis*, 1998.
- [64] M. Taylor, B.A. Wingate, and R.E. Vincent. An algorithm for computing Fekete points in the triangle. *SIAM J. Num. Anal.*, 38:1707–1720, 2000.
- [65] Lloyd N. Trefethen. Is gauss quadrature better than clenshaw-curtis? *SIAM Review*, 50:67–87, 2008.
- [66] Lloyd N. Trefethen and III David Bau. *Numerical Linear Algebra*. SIAM, Philadelphia, PA, USA, 1997.
- [67] Tomáš Vejchodský, Pavel Šolín, and Martin Zítka. Modular hp-FEM system HERMES and its application to Maxwell’s equations. *Mathematics and Computers in Simulation*, 76(1):223–228, 2007.

- [68] Peter E. J. Vos, Spencer J. Sherwin, and Robert M. Kirby. h-to-p efficiently: Implementing finite and spectral/hp element methods to achieve optimal performance for low- and high-order discretisations. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 229:5161–5181, 2010.
- [69] Peter E.J. Vos, Sehun Chun, Alessandro Bolis, Claes Eskilsson, Robert M. Kirby, and Spencer J. Sherwin. A generic framework for time-stepping pdes: General linear methods, object-oriented implementations and applications to fluid problems. *International Journal of Computational Fluid Dynamics*, 25:107–125, 2011.
- [70] F.D. Witherden, P.E. Vincent, and A. Jameson. Chapter 10 – high-order flux reconstruction schemes. *Handbook of Numerical Analysis*, 17:227–263, 2016.
- [71] FR Witherden, AM Farrington, and PE Vincent. PyFR: An open source framework for solving advection-diffusion type problems on streaming architectures using the flux reconstruction approach. *Computer Physics Communications*, 185:3028–3040, 2014.